



WITH
FREE ONLINE
AUDIO



put together



go up

ENGLISH

FOR EVERYONE

ENGLISH PHRASAL VERBS



trip over



take down



LEARN AND PRACTISE MORE THAN 1,000 ENGLISH PHRASAL VERBS

Authors

Thomas Booth worked for 10 years as an English-language teacher in Poland and Russia. He now lives in England, where he works as an editor and English-language materials writer. He has contributed to a number of books in the *English for Everyone* series.

Ben Ffrancon Davies is a freelance writer and translator. He writes textbooks and study guides on a wide range of subjects including ELT, music, and literature. Ben studied Medieval and Modern Languages at the University of Oxford, and has taught English in France and Spain.

UK language consultant

Peter Dainty studied History at the University of Oxford and has been teaching English as a foreign language since the mid-1980s. He taught at London University for 10 years and has written 14 books for publishers such as Macmillan, Penguin, Scholastic, and Oxford University Press.

US language consultant

Professor Emerita Susan Barduhn has contributed to numerous publications. She has also been President of IATEFL; Director of The Language Center, Nairobi; Deputy Director of International House, London; professor and Chair of the MATESOL program at SIT Graduate Institute. She is currently a freelance educational consultant for the US Department of State, the British Council, TransformELT, The Consultants-e, and Fulbright.

ENGLISH FOR EVERYONE

ENGLISH PHRASAL VERBS





Penguin
Random
House

DK LONDON

Senior Editor Ben Ffrancon Davies
Senior Art Editors Clare Shedden, Amy Child
Illustrator Gus Scott
Managing Editor Christine Stroyan
Managing Art Editor Anna Hall
Production Editor George Nimmo
Production Controller Samantha Cross
Jacket Designer Surabhi Wadhwa-Gandhi
Jacket Design Development Manager Sophia MTT
Publisher Andrew Macintyre
Art Director Karen Self
Publishing Director Jonathan Metcalf

DK DELHI

Senior Editor Janashree Singha
Editors Nandini D. Tripathy, Rishi Bryan
Senior Art Editor Vikas Sachdeva
Project Art Editor Sourabh Challariya
Senior DTP Designer Tarun Sharma
DTP Designers Manish Upreti, Anita Yadav
Senior Jacket Designer Suhita Dharamjit
Senior Managing Art Editor Arunesh Talapatra
Managing Editor Soma B. Chowdhury
Pre-production Managers Balwant Singh, Sunil Sharma
Editorial Head Glenda Fernandes
Design Head Malavika Talukder

First published in Great Britain in 2021 by
Dorling Kindersley Limited
DK, One Embassy Gardens, 8 Viaduct Gardens,
London, SW11 7BW

Copyright © 2021 Dorling Kindersley Limited
A Penguin Random House Company
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
001-318636-Mar/2021

All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in or introduced
into a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form, or by any means
(electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise),
without the prior written permission of the copyright owner.

A CIP catalogue record for this book
is available from the British Library.
ISBN: 978-0-2414-3939-5

Printed and bound in China

For the curious
www.dk.com



Contents

How to use this book	6
Introducing phrasal verbs	10

DESCRIBING PEOPLE AND THINGS

01 People and things	18
02 Family	22
03 Relationships	26
04 Visiting people	30
05 Socializing	34
06 Clothing	38
07 Before and after	42

EVERYDAY LIFE

08 Everyday life	44
09 Transportation	48
10 Shopping	52
11 The weather	56
12 Technology	60
13 Crime, the law, and politics	64
14 Money	68
15 Time	72
16 Past and future	76
17 Making plans	80
18 The senses	84
19 Movement and progress	88












20	Studying and research	92
21	At school	96
22	At work	100
23	Careers	104
24	Business	108
25	Numbers and amounts	112
26	Success and failure	116

27	At home	120
28	Chores	124
29	Cooking	128
30	Food and drink	132
31	Free time	136
32	Health	140
33	Sports and exercise	144
34	The arts	148
35	Travel	150

36	Talking	154
37	Reading and writing	158
38	Keeping in touch	162
39	Thoughts and ideas	166
40	Explaining things	170
41	Truth and lies	172
42	Encouragement	176

43	Agreeing and disagreeing	178
44	Opinions and arguments	182
45	Emotions	186
46	Negative emotions	190
47	Making decisions	194
48	Making mistakes	198
49	Accidents and damage	200
50	Problems and solutions	204
51	Secrets and surprises	208

52	“Come,” “make,” and “do”	212
53	“Get” and “set”	216
54	“Go”	220
55	“Put,” “take,” and “give”	224
56	Exclamations	228

Reference	230
	230 
	231 
	234 
	235 
	236 
	237

Answers 238Index of phrasal verbs 251Acknowledgments 256

How to use this book

English for Everyone: English Phrasal Verbs will help you learn, understand, and remember the most common phrasal verbs in English. Each of the 56 units in the book consists of a teaching spread on a subject or theme, with illustrated sentences to place the phrasal verbs in context, and then a practice spread with exercises to reinforce what you have learned. Listen to the free audio and repeat each phrasal verb and sentence. The answers to all the exercises are at the back of the book, along with a comprehensive index.

Unit number The book is divided into units. The unit number helps you keep track of your progress.

Sample sentences Phrasal verbs are shown in the context of a sample sentence (see page 8).

Module number Every module is identified with a unique number, so you can easily locate the related audio.

UK/US phrasal verbs Some phrasal verbs are specific to UK or US English. These are labeled (UK) or (US).

Base forms and definitions Beneath each sentence, the phrasal verb is written in its base form along with a definition.

Write-on lines You are encouraged to write your own translations of English phrasal verbs to create your own reference pages.

Modules Many teaching spreads are broken into modules covering different topics within the theme.

15 Time

15.1 TIME

The journey **dragged on** for hours. The kids were so bored!

drag on
continue for a long time (negative)



Mikhail **dragged out** his speech for so long that some of the audience fell asleep.

drag out
make something last too long (negative)



Time's **getting on** now. Let's hurry home before it gets dark.

get on (UK)
become late (about the time)



As the years **went by**, I grew to love Phil's sense of humor.

go by
pass (about time)



We take the children to the park every afternoon to **break up** the day.

break up
break (a day or period of time) into separate parts



The deadline for the project **crept up on** us.

creep up (on)
happen slowly to someone without them noticing it



The doctor's busy at the moment, but I'll try to **fit you in** later today.

fit in
make time for something



I enjoy **whiling away** the hours reading novels and comic books.

while away
pass the time in a relaxed way



15.2 WAITING

Hi Sally! Can you **hang on** a minute while I grab my umbrella?

hang on
wait for a short time (informal)



The service here is terrible! It's **holding everyone up**.

hold up
make someone or something late



Danny wasn't able to finish because he **ran out of** time.

run out (of)
have no more (time)

Cleaning the house **took up** Liam's weekend.

take up
occupy, use up (someone's time)

Your session has **timed out**. Please log in again.

time out
log someone out of a computer, site or website because of inactivity

Commuting to and from work **eats into** my time.

eat into
take up too much (of someone's time)

Chris was sitting in the cafe, waiting for his girlfriend to arrive.

wait for
stay somewhere or delay something until something happens

Listening exercise This symbol indicates that you should listen to an audio track in order to answer the questions in the exercise.

AND THE STATEMENTS AND
THE CORRECT MEANING

- her colleagues. ☐
- watched her colleagues. ☒
- er colleagues are spies. ☐
- s of tomato and basil. ☐
- only tomato and basil in it. ☐
- tomato and basil flavor. ☐
- ssing tomato and basil. ☐
- through his telescope. ☐
- at a telescope. ☐
- telescope. ☐
- ic telescope. ☐



**18.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND
MATCH THE IMAGES TO THE
CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS**

look at

taste of

listen in on

sniff around

See also:
break up 3, 21, 29, 38 creep up on 51 fit in 15
get on 2, 9 go by 54 run out (of) 30 take up 31, 55

the exam



Hurry up, Oliver! The train's going to leave soon!

hurry up
move or do something more quickly



o all of



I can't believe how quickly winter's come around again!

come around
happen again (about a regular event)



ver,



Our professor always draws out our lectures by answering lots of questions at the end.

draw out
make something last longer than necessary



ork really



Quitting my job at the café has freed up more time for my studies.

free up
make more time available



e waiting for



When the train was canceled, the passengers had to wait around for the next one.

wait around (for)
do nothing until something happens



73

Sample answer The first question of each exercise is answered for you, to help make the task easy to understand.

Exercise number Each exercise is identified with a unique number, so you can easily locate answers.

Exercise instruction Each exercise is introduced with a brief instruction, telling you what you need to do.

Aa

18.7 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS

raise yourself to see past an obstacle

hear out

secretly listen to someone

listen up

cause somewhere to smell unpleasant

look over

pay attention to notice something

stink out

receive information about something

look out for

pay attention

look on

listen to someone without interrupting

hear about

watch something without taking part

listen in (on)

Aa

18.8 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL

The scary scene in the movie made everyone look away.

1 Alex's cookies _____ cinnamon. I asked to try one.

2 Have you _____ the new gym in town? It's supposed to be great.

3 Dayita _____ the radio while she ate her breakfast.

4 Fiona _____ her colleagues to steal their ideas.

5 Sarah and Dionne _____ the well. There was no sign of the bottom.

smelled of

spied on

look-away

looked into

listened to

heard about

87

PRACTICE SPREAD

Space for writing You are encouraged to write your answers in the book for future reference.

Supporting graphics Illustrations help you understand and remember new phrasal verbs.

Audio support All teaching modules are supported by audio recordings to help you recognize and pronounce spoken vocabulary.

Sample sentences

Each phrasal verb is shown within a sample sentence that contextualizes its meaning. Its base form and definition are also given.

Phrasal verb The phrasal verb is highlighted in each sentence.

Illustration Each sentence is illustrated to show the meaning of the phrasal verb.

Angela **meets up with** her colleagues once a week to discuss all their new ideas.

Base form The phrasal verb is given in the base form.

Definition A definition is given to help you understand the meaning.

- **meet up (with)**
- **get together with**



Third particle Sometimes a phrasal verb's third particle is optional (see page 12), so it is written in parentheses.

"See also" boxes

Many phrasal verbs have more than one meaning. Each unit has a "see also" box which directs you to other units where the same phrasal verbs appear with different meanings.

Unit number This number tells you which other unit the phrasal verb appears in.

See also:

back up 12 climb down 19 fall out 49
make up 41, 52 take back 10, 16, 55

ENDING CONFLICT

colleagues always make fun of me, but he just **laughs it off**.

criticism or a difficult situation
laughing at it



Introducing phrasal verbs

Pages 10–17 contain an introductory grammar section explaining what phrasal verbs are and how they work grammatically. It also covers different types of phrasal verbs, as well as phrasal nouns and adjectives.

Modular learning The grammar section is broken down into modules.

The preview shows a section titled 'Introducing phrasal verbs' with several modules. One module is titled 'WHAT IS A PHRASAL VERB?' and explains that it is a combination of a verb and a particle. Another module is titled 'HOW TO USE PHRASAL VERBS' and lists different types of phrasal verbs: 'Verb + Particle', 'Verb + Noun', 'Verb + Adjective', and 'Verb + Preposition'. It also includes a section on 'PHRASAL VERBS WITH OBJECTS' and 'PHRASAL VERBS WITHOUT OBJECTS'. The preview also shows a section on 'PHRASAL VERBS WITH OBJECTS' and 'PHRASAL VERBS WITHOUT OBJECTS'.

English for Everyone: English Phrasal Verbs offers extensive supporting audio resources. Every phrasal verb and sentence in the teaching spreads is recorded, and you are encouraged to listen to the audio and repeat the phrases and sentences out loud, until you are confident you understand and can pronounce what has been said.



This symbol indicates that audio recordings of the phrasal verbs and sentences in a module are available for you to listen to.



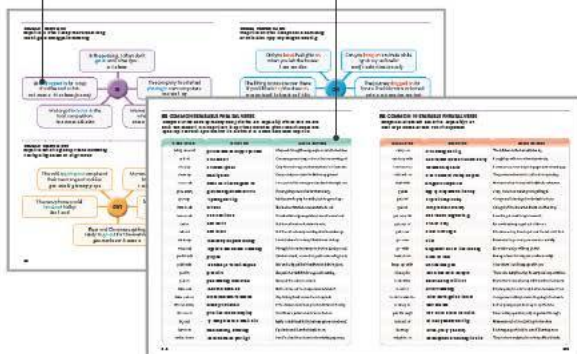
This symbol indicates that you should listen to an audio track in order to answer the questions in the exercise.



At the end of the book, pages 230–237 contain a reference section, which features additional information about phrasal verbs, including examples of some common phrasal nouns and phrasal adjectives.

Visual diagrams are used to present common particles.

Reference tables contain lists of common phrasal verbs, nouns, and adjectives.



The book is designed to make it easy to monitor your progress. Answers are provided for every exercise, so you can see how well you have understood and remembered the phrasal verbs you have learned.

Answers Find the answers to every exercise printed at the back of the book.

Exercise numbers These numbers match the number at the top-left corner of each exercise.

25.3

- 1 The number of people online shot up last year.
- 2 The coach divided the players into two equal teams.
- 3 Shreya counted up the money, wanting coffee and water.
- 4 When Georgia was asked for a tip, she added on a 20% tip.

25.4

A 3 B 1 C 6 D 2

25.5

- 1 Katie's bills have been a lot of debt now.
- 2 The company's share but it's finally starting to
- 3 The temperature varies but it **averages out** at a
- 4 We estimated the cost to be £14,900, but rounded to the nearest thousand

The index contains every phrasal verb from the teaching spreads, as well as the phrasal nouns and adjectives from the reference section, listed in alphabetical order, followed by each unit and module number where they appear.

M

made-up R6

major in (US) **20.1**

make for 37.2, 52.2

make into 34.1

make of 52.2

make off with 52.2

make out 41.2, 52.2

make up **41.2 44.3 52.2**
see also made-up R6

make up for 43.2

mark down 20.2

measure out 29.1

measure up (to) 7.2

meet up (with) 22.2

mess around 21.2, 41.2

mess up 49.1

mill around 5.1

Module number

The number in the index matches the module number on the teaching page.

Multiple units

When a phrasal verb appears more than once, each module number is listed.

Introducing phrasal verbs

Some verbs in English are made up of two or more words. These are called phrasal verbs. They are very common in English and help to make your language sound more idiomatic and fluent.

WHAT IS A PHRASAL VERB?

Phrasal verbs consist of a verb plus one or more particles (prepositions or adverbs). The particle often changes the usual meaning of the verb.



THREE-WORD PHRASAL VERBS

Three-word phrasal verbs consist of a verb, a particle, and a preposition. The particle and preposition often change the usual meaning of the verb.



FURTHER EXAMPLES

She **chills out** in the evening.



He **doesn't go out** when he's tired.



Tim and Jo **got back together**.



We can **check into** the hotel now.



Do you always **turn up** late?



Did the CEO **sign off on** this?



Questions are formed in the usual way.

HOW PHRASAL VERBS WORK

The particle always comes after the verb. The verb changes form to match the subject as usual. The particle never changes form.

Here, the verb takes the third person "-s."
He gets up. ✓



He get ups. ✗

This is wrong. The particle should never change.

He up gets. ✗

This is wrong. The particle should come after the verb.

PHRASAL VERBS IN DIFFERENT TENSES

When phrasal verbs are used in different tenses, the verb changes like any other verb, but the particle remains the same.



PRESENT SIMPLE

The particle never changes.
We go out once a week.

PAST SIMPLE

We went out last night.

PRESENT CONTINUOUS

We are going out this evening.

FUTURE WITH "WILL"

We will go out again next week.

FURTHER EXAMPLES



Apple pie and ice cream **go together** perfectly.



Chad is **applying for** jobs in the media.



Troy **freaked out** when he saw the spider.



After a break, Ramone will **get on with** cleaning the bathroom.

TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE PHRASAL VERBS

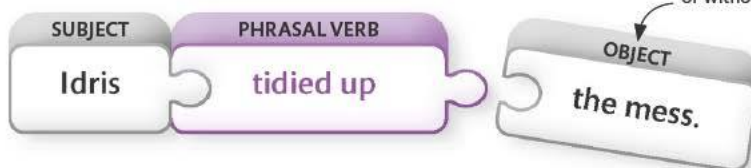
Some phrasal verbs take an object, which is a noun that receives the action of the verb. Verbs which take an object are known as **transitive verbs**.



Some phrasal verbs do not take an object. These verbs are known as **intransitive verbs**.



Some phrasal verbs can be either **transitive** or **intransitive**.



"Tidy up" can be used with or without an object.



MAKING INTRANSITIVE PHRASAL VERBS TRANSITIVE

Some intransitive phrasal verbs need a preposition when they are made transitive.

At the end of their stay, Julia and John **checked out**.



At the end of their stay, Julia and John **checked out of** their hotel.

To use "check out" with an object, you need to add "of."

FURTHER EXAMPLES

Julian usually **heads off** early to avoid the traffic.



Julian usually **heads off to** work early to avoid the traffic.

Ben and Gus finally **made up** after their argument.



Ben **made up with** Gus after their argument.

DIFFERENT MEANINGS

Many phrasal verbs have more than one meaning. Some phrasal verbs appear in this book more than once with a different meaning each time.

UNRELATED MEANINGS

The phrasal verb “do up” has two unrelated meanings.

Mirek **did up** his coat to keep out the icy breeze.

fasten a piece of clothing



Emily is **doing up** her house at the moment.

improve, renovate



LITERAL AND METAPHORICAL MEANINGS

Certain phrasal verbs have a basic literal meaning, and a more complicated metaphorical one.

This sentence uses the literal meaning of “break up.” The chocolate is being separated into smaller pieces.

Patrick **broke up** the chocolate before adding it to the cake mixture.

separate something into smaller pieces



In this sentence, nothing has literally broken, but Maria and Pablo have metaphorically separated from each other.

After a huge argument, Maria and Pablo decided to **break up**.

end a romantic relationship



REGISTER

Although some phrasal verbs can be used in formal situations, others are more informal. Many phrasal verbs have a single-word equivalent which is more formal.

This sentence uses the high-register word “persevere,” which is only usually used in formal language.

Despite the storm, the engineers **persevered** and installed the new phone line.



This sentence means exactly the same thing, but “soldier on” makes the sentence less formal.

Despite the storm, the engineers **soldiered on** and installed the new phone line.

SEPARABLE PHRASAL VERBS

If a phrasal verb has an object, the object can sometimes go between the verb and the particle. This does not change the meaning. Phrasal verbs that do this are called "separable" phrasal verbs. See page 234 for more examples.

He is **picking up** litter.

The object can go after the particle.

He is **picking** litter **up**.

The object can also go between the verb and the particle.

He is **picking it up**.

If the object of a separable phrasal verb is a pronoun, it must go between the verb and particle.



FURTHER EXAMPLES

I **turned on** the light.



I **turned** the light **on**.

Can you **pick up** that box?



Can you **pick** that box **up**?

You should **throw away** those old shoes.



You should **throw** those old shoes **away**.

I was annoyed because he **woke up** the baby.



I was annoyed because he **woke** her **up**.

I always **fill up** the water jug when it's empty.



I always **fill it up** when it's empty.



COMMON MISTAKES SEPARABLE PHRASAL VERBS

If the direct object of a separable phrasal verb is a pronoun, it must go between the verb and the particle.

Pronoun

He **picked it up**. ✓

The pronoun cannot go at the end of the sentence.

He **picked up it**. ✗

INSEPARABLE PHRASAL VERBS

Some phrasal verbs cannot be separated. The object must always come after the particle—it can never sit between the verb and the particle. This is true whether the object is a noun or a pronoun. See page 235 for more examples.



We had to run to **get on** the train. ✓

The verb and the particle must stay together.

We had to run to **get on** it. ✓

The verb and particle stay together even if the direct object is a pronoun.

We had to run to **get the train on**. ✗

This is wrong. The object cannot sit between the verb and the particle.

FURTHER EXAMPLES

I've **come across** a new recipe.



He **sleeps in** most Saturdays.



I need to **go over** my notes.



I **ran into** her at the supermarket.



Susan really **takes after** her father, they're very similar.



Drop by the house any time you like.



SEPARABLE AND INSEPARABLE PHRASAL VERBS

Some phrasal verbs, like "get back from," can be separable or inseparable depending on the context.

When "get back from" means "retrieve from" it is separable. The object must go between "get" and "back."

I finally **got** my lawnmower **back from** Dave.



When "get back from" means "return from," it is always inseparable.

I **got back from** Italy yesterday.



PHRASAL NOUNS

Some nouns are formed from phrasal verbs, often by joining the verb and the particle together.



See page 236 for a list of common phrasal nouns.

Verb → Particle

The teacher asked me to **hand out** the exam papers.

The teacher gave us a **handout** for the lesson.

↑
Phrasal noun



Sometimes, the noun is formed by putting the particle in front of the verb.

Oh no! It was sunny and now it's **pouring down**.



We have a rainy season with daily **downpours**.



FURTHER EXAMPLES

The company is trying to **cut back** on staff expenses.



Not another **cutback**! The company must be in serious trouble.

It's a shame that he wants to **drop out** of school.



We've had a surprisingly high percentage of **dropouts** in the class.

We want to **get away** and go somewhere sunny this winter.



A trip to Australia sounds like a fabulous **getaway**.

PHRASAL ADJECTIVES

Some adjectives are formed from phrasal verbs, often by joining the verb and the particle together, sometimes with a hyphen.



See page 237
for a list of common
phrasal adjectives.

Zane asked James to **tone down** his language.

Verb

Particle

Zane asked James to use more **toned-down** language.

Phrasal adjective

Sometimes, the adjective is formed by putting the particle in front of the verb.

Anetta is always **speaking out** about environmental issues.

Anetta is very **outspoken** about environmental issues.



FURTHER EXAMPLES

For this yoga position, you have to **stretch** your arms **out**.



Simon got into position with his arms **outstretched**.

Ed **watered down** his opinion when writing his review.



Ed wrote a **watered-down** version of his real opinion for the review.

Kemal **knocked down** the price of jewelry by 15%.



Kemal sold some of his jewelry at a **knockdown** price.

01 People and things

1.1 PEOPLE

Hundreds of people **packed into** the town hall to watch the debate.

pack into
fit into a place in large numbers



I found it really hard to **fit in with** the art class. They're all much younger than me.

fit in (with)
feel like you belong in a group



Some of the older children have been **ganging up on** me and calling me names.

gang up (on)
form a group to hurt someone



Sheila's neighbors **look down on** her because her house is smaller than theirs.

look down on
think you are better than another person



I got my son a puppy for his birthday. After asking me for months, he finally **wore me down!**

wear down
convince someone to do what you want (often by asking many times)



I bumped into Sandra at the park. She was **asking after** you.

ask after
ask for news about someone



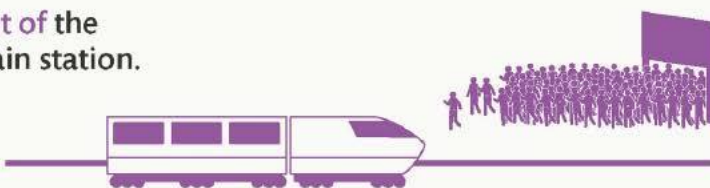
Thousands of fans **flooded into** the stadium to watch the singer perform.

flood in(to)
enter a space in large numbers



After the concert, everyone **spilled out of** the stadium and made their way to the train station.

spill out (of)
leave a space in large numbers



See also:

come across 39, 52 fit in 15 get back (from) 35

turn to 27 turn up 4, 27

My sister **watched over** our son while Ania and I went shopping.

watch over

make sure nothing bad happens to someone or something



Adi has got a temper. He **turned on** me the instant I suggested he buy a new suit.

turn on

attack someone without warning



Toshiro's been **buttering** his brother **up** because he wants to borrow his car.

butter up

praise or flatter someone so that they will do you a favor



Jordan's aunts always **fuss over** him when they come to visit.

fuss over

pay a lot of attention to someone



Barney really **looks up to** his grandfather. He loves listening to his stories.

look up to

admire someone



1.2 THINGS

Nuwa **gathered up** the plates from the table and took them to the kitchen.

gather up

collect things together



It was really hard to **part with** my old car. I'd had it since I was a student.

part with

relinquish something important to you



While looking through things in my attic, I **came across** an old portrait of my great-grandfather.

come across

find something by chance



Mel lent Dave her lawnmower a month ago, and she finally **got it back from** him.

get back (from)

retrieve something



Ava lost her passport ages ago. It **turned up** when she was cleaning the living room.

turn up

be found (usually by accident)



Aa 1.3 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

Barney really looks up to his grandfather.

He loves his grandfather.

He admires his grandfather.

He hates his grandfather.

☐
☒
☐

1 After the concert, everyone spilled out of the stadium.

☐ People entered the stadium together.

People ran around the stadium together.

People left the stadium in large numbers.

☐
☐
☐

2 Toshiro's been buttering his brother up.

☐ He has been flattering him for a favor.

He has been yelling at him.

He has been arguing with him.

☐
☐
☐

3 Sheila's arrogant neighbors look down on her.

☐ They think they are better than her.

They think she is better than them.

They think she is wonderful.

☐
☐
☐

4 I came across an old portrait of my great-grandfather.

☐ I threw away the portrait.

I found the portrait by chance.

I looked for the portrait.

☐
☐
☐

Aa 1.4 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



I found it hard to fit in with the art class.



It was hard to part with my old car.



Sandra was asking after you at the park.



Jordan's aunts fuss over him when they visit.



Nuwa gathered up the plates from the table.

Aa 1.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Hundreds of people packed **into** / ~~over~~ / ~~through~~ the town hall to watch the debate.

1 Some of the older children have been **mobbing** / **ganging** / **teaming** up on me and calling me names.

2 Ava lost her passport ages ago. It turned **out** / **on** / **up** when she was cleaning the living room.

3 Adi has got a temper. He **pivoted** / **turned** / **rotated** on me the instant I suggested he buy a new suit.

4 Mel lent Dave her lawnmower a month ago, and she finally got it **back** / **forward** / **down** from him.

retrieve something

=

get back (from)

- ☐ be found (usually by accident)
- ☐ make sure nothing bad happens to someone
- ☐ attack someone without warning
- ☐ convince someone to do what you want
- ☐ fit into a place in large numbers

=

=

=

=

=

watch over

turn up

wear down

pack into

~~get back (from)~~

turn on



Thousands of fans flooded into the stadium.



③ I got my son a puppy. After asking me for months, he finally _____ me _____ !



① Some of the older children have been _____ on me and calling me names.



④ Hundreds of people _____ the town hall to watch the debate.



② Mel lent Dave her lawnmower a month ago, and she finally _____ it _____ from him.



⑤ Barney really _____ his grandfather. He loves listening to his stories.

02 Family

2.1 FAMILY

Dan and Sheila have **brought up** their children to be kind to animals.

bring up
teach children how to behave



Colin **lives with** his son in a house at the edge of town.

live with
share the same house



Jenny's **grown out of** her old toys. She prefers playing video games now.

grow out of
lose interest in something as you get older



Liam **gets on** very well **with** his elder sister. They're always laughing together.

get on (with)
have a good relationship with someone



Sam wants to be a pilot when he **grows up**.

grow up
develop from child to adult



Albert's parents **named** him **after** his great-grandfather.

name after
give someone the same name as someone else



2.2 PETS

Lisa **puts** her rabbit **in** its cage each evening before bed.

put in
place inside



I **let** the cat **out** every morning after I've woken up.

let out
allow to leave



Fiona's cat doesn't like strangers, but he's **warming to** Dan.

warm to
become fond of



I **let** the cat **in** when it started to rain.

let in
allow to enter



See also:

get on 9, 15 grow out of 6 let out 6
live with 47 settle down 45

After traveling for a few years, Bill **settled down** and bought a house next door to his parents.

settle down

live in one place



My mother **looks after** my children while I'm at work.

look after

care for, take responsibility for



Jasmine **takes after** her mother. They're very similar people.

take after

have the characteristics of a parent or relative



My family **pulled together** when my father was unwell.

pull together

work as a group to deal with a difficult situation



Will and Joe are identical twins. It's almost impossible to **tell** them **apart**.

tell apart

recognize the difference



Whenever his children stay out late, Carlo **waits up** until they get home.

wait up

wait for someone to get home before going to bed



Olly's dog **ran away** last week while they were at the park.

run away

escape



After a few days, Olly's dog **came back** all by herself.

come back

return

Aa

2.3 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Olly's dog ran away last week while they were at the park.

My family pulled together when my father was unwell.

My mother looks after my children while I'm at work.

I let the cat in when it started to rain.

Aa

2.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

My mother looks after my children while I'm at work.



My mother looks over my children while I'm at work.



① After a few days, Olly's dog came back all by herself.



After a few days, Olly's dog came under all by herself.



② Jasmine takes over her mother. They're very similar people.



Jasmine takes after her mother. They're very similar people.



③ I let the cat around every morning after I've woken up.



I let the cat out every morning after I've woken up.



④ Albert's parents named him after his great-grandfather.



Albert's parents named him behind his great-grandfather.



⑤ After traveling for a few years, Bill settled up and bought a house.



After traveling for a few years, Bill settled down and bought a house.



⑥ Colin lives on his son in a house at the edge of town.



Colin lives with his son in a house at the edge of town.



2.5 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL

Olly's dog ran away last week while they were at the park.

- 1 Lisa puts her rabbit _____ its cage each evening before bed.
- 2 Will and Joe are identical twins. It's almost impossible to tell them _____.
- 3 After traveling for a few years, Bill settled _____ and bought a house next door to his parents.
- 4 Liam gets _____ very well with his elder sister. They're always laughing together.
- 5 Fiona's cat doesn't like strangers, but he's warming _____ Dan.
- 6 Jenny's grown _____ of her old toys, she prefers playing video games now.

to down ~~away~~ on apart out in



2.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES BELOW THE IMAGE



Sam wants to be a pilot when he
grows up.



3 Jasmine _____ her mother.
They're very similar people.



1 Will and Joe are identical twins. It's almost
impossible to _____ them _____.



4 I _____ the cat _____ every morning
after I've woken up.



2 Lisa _____ her rabbit _____ its
cage each evening before bed.



5 Jenny's _____ her old toys, she
prefers playing video games now.

03 Relationships

3.1 FRIENDSHIPS

Our shared interest in music has really **brought us together**.

bring together
create a close relationship



Ken **stuck by** Cath when her restaurant went bankrupt.

stick by
continue to support someone who is in a difficult situation



I've really **gone off** Paul since I saw him at the party. He behaved very badly.

go off
like something or someone less



Misha **stood by** Colin when he decided to quit college.

stand by
support or defend someone when other people don't



3.2 ROMANTIC RELATIONSHIPS

Jack and Ula really **care for** each other. They've been together for 50 years.

care for
love someone or like them very much



I think Pierre has **fallen for** Clara. Have you seen how he looks at her?

fall for
start loving someone, fall in love



Sonia is trying to **win Claude back** because she's still in love with him.

win back
persuade someone to start having a romantic relationship with you again



My brother **set me up** with a woman who works at his office.

set up
arrange a date for someone else



Luisa has **finished with** Ben. He's very upset.

finish with (UK)
end a relationship with someone



They started **going out with** each other when they were at school.

go out (with)
have a romantic relationship with someone



See also:

break up 15, 21, 29, 38 care for 32 fall for 41 go off 8, 27, 30, 35
go out 5, 27, 54 set up 12, 53 take out 14, 21, 28

After we left school, my friends and I **drifted apart**. I became more interested in my career than music.

drift apart
slowly become less close



My best friends and I have **stuck together** since high school.

stick together
stay together and support each other



Although I haven't seen Zaira for many years, I always **hear from** her on my birthday.

hear from
receive news from



Bernadette **confided in** Martha that she was in love with Pavel.

confide in
share a secret with someone you trust



Katia and I dated for a few weeks, but our relationship **fizzled out**.

fizzle out
lose energy over a period of time, slowly come to an end



For our first date, Phil **took me out** to an expensive restaurant.

take out
take someone on a date



Robin **asked** Helen **out** yesterday. They're going to the movies together.

ask out
invite someone to go on a date with you



After a huge argument, Maria and Pablo decided to **break up**.

break up (with)
end a romantic relationship









Carlos and Mia separated a few months ago, but they recently **got back together**.

get back together
restart a romantic relationship





3.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A  Robin asked Helen out yesterday. They're going to the movies together. ☐
- B  I think Pierre has fallen for Clara. Have you seen how he looks at her? ☐
- C  Our shared interest in music has really brought us together. ☒ 1
- D  Carlos and Mia separated a few months ago, but they recently got back together. ☐
- E  After a huge argument, Maria and Pablo decided to break up. ☐
- F  Although I haven't seen Zaira for many years, I always hear from her on my birthday. ☐

Aa

3.4 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

- After a huge argument, Maria and Pablo decided up to break up.
- 1 My brother me up set with a woman who works at his office.
- 2 Jack and Ula for care really each other. They've been together for 50 years.
- 3 They started with going out each other when they were at school.
- 4 Misha by stood Colin when he decided to quit college.

Aa

3.5 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS

- | | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|----------------|
| 1 | start loving someone, fall in love | fizzle out |
| 2 | like something or someone less | drift apart |
| 3 | create a close relationship | fall for |
| 4 | slowly come to an end | finish with |
| 5 | arrange a date for someone else | bring together |
| 6 | slowly become less close | care for |
| 7 | end a relationship with someone | go off |
| 8 | love someone or like them very much | set up |

Aa

3.6 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING PHRASAL VERBS



Katia and I dated for a few weeks,
but our relationship fizzled out.



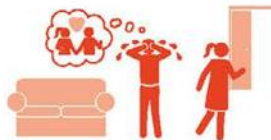
1 My best friends and I have _____
since high school.



2 For our first date, Phil _____ me _____
to an expensive restaurant.



3 Bernadette _____ Martha
that she was in love with Pavel.



4 Luisa has _____ Ben.
He's very upset.



5 Ken _____ Cath when her
restaurant went bankrupt.

04 Visiting people

4.1 VISITING PEOPLE

I **popped in** to see Brian on Saturday morning.

pop in (UK)

visit someone at their home (informal)



We chatted for hours, and he suggested I **stick around** for dinner.

stick around

stay somewhere longer than planned



Angelo **turned up** at my house at 6am. I was still in bed!

turn up

arrive (often unexpectedly)



After chatting on the doorstep for a moment, Malik **invited me in**.

invite in(to)

ask someone to enter your house



On our way home from the beach, we **called in** to see Grandma.

call in (UK)

visit someone at their home (often on your way elsewhere)



Following the interview, the secretary **showed Connor out**.

show out

take someone to the door as they leave



My new neighbors, Kaito and Leiko, **had me over** for dinner last night.

have over

have people as guests at your home



They **showed me around** their beautiful home.

show around

give someone a tour



It looks like Kia has **invited** everyone she knows **along to** the party.

invite along (to)

ask someone to go somewhere with you



See also:
call in 22, 50 come in 56
turn up 1, 27

While you're in town, try to **swing by**.
It would be good to see you.

swing by
visit someone's house on your
way somewhere else



My father **came into** the house
and took off his coat.

come in(to)
enter a place



Yesterday afternoon, Liam **dropped in**
for a cup of coffee and a chat.

drop in
visit someone at their
home (informal)



On her way home from the gym, Miriam
stopped off at the supermarket to get
something for dinner.

stop off
stop during a journey to do something



While everyone was in the garden, I found
Klaus **snooping around** the kitchen.

snoop around
secretly look for something



4.2 A PARTY INVITATION

Dear Mason and Emily,

We'd like to invite you over for a
barbecue to celebrate Beth's birthday on
Saturday. Feel free to come over any
time after 2pm, and please bring the
kids along, too!

Love, Omar and Beth
P.S. You are all welcome to stay over
if you like!

We'd like to **invite you over** for a barbecue
to celebrate Beth's birthday.

invite over
invite someone to your home



Omar told us to **come over**
any time after 2pm.

come over
visit someone (at their home)



Mason and Emily **brought** the kids **along**
to the barbecue.

bring along
bring someone or something with you



We ended up **staying over** at Beth
and Omar's house.

stay over
stay at someone's house overnight





4.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR



come into ☒
pop in ☐



1 show around ☐
have over ☐



2 invite along ☐
turn up ☐



3 show out ☐
stop off ☐



4 snoop around ☐
swing by ☐



5 drop in ☐
stay over ☐

Aa

4.4 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

I popped in to see Brian on Saturday morning.

I called Brian. ☐

I visited Brian at his home. ☒

I invited Brian to my home. ☐

3 Mason and Emily brought the kids along.

☐ They took their kids away. ☐

They left their kids behind. ☐

They brought their kids with them. ☐

1 Angelo turned up at my house at 6am.

☐ He arrived at 6am. ☐

He left at 6am. ☐

He fell asleep at 6am. ☐

4 We'd like to invite you over for a barbecue.

☐ We'd like you to come to our home. ☐

We'd like you to call us. ☐

We'd like you to host a barbecue. ☐

2 They showed me around their beautiful home.

☐ They asked me to leave. ☐

They asked me to come in. ☐

They gave me a tour. ☐

5 Liam dropped in for a cup of coffee and a chat.

☐ He dropped coffee on himself. ☐

He visited me at my home. ☐

He took me out for coffee. ☐

Aa

4.5 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDING

- Following the interview,
- 1 On her way home from the gym,
- 2 My father came into the house
- 3 Omar told us to come over
- 4 After chatting on the doorstep,
- 5 We ended up staying over
- 6 While everyone was in the garden,
- and took off his coat.
- I found Klaus snooping around inside.
- the secretary showed Connor out.
- at Beth and Omar's house.
- Miriam stopped off at the supermarket.
- Malik invited me in.
- any time after 2pm.

Aa

4.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Yesterday afternoon, Liam **dropped out** for a cup of coffee and a chat.

Yesterday afternoon, Liam dropped in for a cup of coffee and a chat.



- 1 My new neighbors, Kaito and Leiko, **had** me **under** for dinner last night.



- 2 We chatted for hours, and he suggested I **stick up** for dinner.



- 3 On our way home from the beach, we **called out** to see Grandma.



- 4 Omar told us to **come above** any time after 2pm.



- 5 While you're in town, try to **swing off**. It would be good to see you.



05 Socializing

5.1 SOCIALIZING

Katie asked Lisa if she wanted to **come out** to play.

come out
go somewhere with someone



Chris spends most weekends **hanging out** with his friends.

hang out (with)
spend time at a certain place
with your friends (informal)



Vincent and Maya decided to **stay in**. They ordered some pizza and watched a movie.

stay in
remain at home



Once a year, my school friends and I go out for a meal together to **catch up**.

catch up (with)
talk to friends who you
have not talked to recently



As I was leaving for the art exhibition, I asked Joe if he wanted to **come along**.

come along (with)
accompany someone, go
somewhere with someone



The carnival was amazing. We **stayed out** until dawn.

stay out
remain away from home until late



5.2 LEAVING

Joe suddenly **took off** without saying where he was going.

take off
leave (often unexpectedly)



We **headed off to** the beach early because we wanted to avoid the crowds.

head off (to)
leave, begin a journey



The movie was terrible, so we **slipped out** halfway through.

slip out
leave without telling people



Neil was **turned away from** the nightclub because he was wearing casual clothes.

turn away (from)
refuse to let someone enter



See also: come along 31, 52 come out 12, 41 get together 53
go out 3, 27, 54 hang out 28 head off (to) 8 slip out 51
take off 6, 9, 22, 55 turn away 19

Lots of guests were **milling around**, waiting for Raj to make his speech.

mill around

slowly move around a room or space (often waiting for something)



Fleur and Clare were getting ready to **go out** for the evening.

go out

go somewhere with someone, socialize with friends



I was glad to see Marvin at the party. He always manages to **liven up** things.

liven up

make something more exciting



Amara let her little sister **tag along** when she went to the ice rink with her friends.

tag along

go somewhere with someone (often without an invitation)



Our local hotel has a large room that it **hires out** for parties.

hire out (UK)

allow someone to use something in exchange for money



Ella likes to **get together** with her friends at the ice cream parlor on Friday evenings.

get together

meet and spend time with friends



Charlie **stormed out of** the store when the manager refused to give him a refund.

storm out (of)

leave somewhere because you are angry



Paul had to **shoot off** at the end of the meeting to catch his train home.

shoot off (UK)

leave quickly (informal)



I hate to **tear you away**, but we're going to miss the last train.

tear away (from)

make someone leave a place even though they want to stay



Nadiya had to **dash off** to pick up the kids from school.

dash off (UK)

leave quickly (informal)



Aa

5.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Chris spends most weekends hanging ~~up on~~ / ~~out with~~ / ~~in on~~ his friends.

1



Amara let her little sister tag ~~along~~ / ~~about~~ / ~~above~~ when she went to the ice rink.

2



Ella likes to get ~~under~~ / ~~together~~ / ~~on~~ with her friends at the ice cream parlor.

3



I hate to tear you ~~out~~ / ~~away~~ / ~~up~~, but we're going to miss the last train.

4



Katie asked Lisa if she wanted to come ~~about~~ / ~~on~~ / ~~out~~ to play.

5



Joe suddenly took ~~off~~ / ~~up~~ / ~~in~~ without saying where he was going.

Aa

5.4 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL TO CREATE PHRASAL VERBS

Neil was the nightclub because he was wearing casual clothes.

1

Charlie the store when the manager refused to give him a refund.

2

As I was leaving for the art exhibition, I asked Joe if he wanted to .

3

Lots of guests were waiting for Raj to make his speech.

4

Vincent and Maya decided to . They ordered pizza and watched a movie.

5

We the beach early because we wanted to avoid the crowds.

6

Once a year, my school friends and I go out for a meal together to .

along

up

~~away from~~

out of

around

off to

in



5.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MATCH THE IMAGES TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS



liven up

stay out

shoot off

catch up

mill around

Aa

5.6 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

The movie was terrible, so we slipped out halfway through.

1 Nadiya had to off to dash pick up the kids from school.

2 The carnival was amazing. stayed We until out dawn.

3 Fleur and Clare were getting to ready out go for the evening.

4 Our local hotel has a large room that it out hires for parties.

06 Clothing

6.1 CLOTHING

Angelica helped her son to **button up** his shirt as he got ready for school.

button up
fasten the buttons on a piece of clothing



When Tom realized he was late, he **threw on** a jacket and tie, and ran for the bus.

throw on
put a piece of clothing on quickly



As Hasan was running across the school yard, one of his shoes **came off**.

come off
fall off by mistake



All the children at the party had **dressed up as dinosaurs**.

dress up (as)
wear a costume to look like something



I hope this juice stain **comes out** when I wash my shirt.

come out (of)
be washed clean (about a stain)



Gemma's shoes **go** really well **with** that dress.

go with
look good with another piece of clothing



Arnie's so proud of his new jacket. He's been **showing it off** to everyone.

show off (to)
show people something you are proud of



Mirek **did up** his coat to keep out the icy breeze.

do up
fasten a piece of clothing



Carly's shoes are too big for her, but she'll **grow into** them.

grow into
become big enough to wear an item of clothing



Gio's **grown out of** his sweater, so he's going to give it to his little brother.

grow out of
become too big for an item of clothing



See also: come off 26, 52 come out (of) 52 cover up 41
do up 52 grow out of 2 hang up 38 let out 2 put on 27, 41, 55
take in 51, 55 take off 5, 9, 22, 55

This dress is a bit too big. We'll need to **take it in** a little.

take in
make a piece of clothing smaller



The jacket is too tight. We need to **let it out** a bit.

let out
make a piece of clothing bigger



Kelly stopped to **tie up** one of her shoe laces.

tie up
fasten (usually your shoe laces)



It was very hot in the lecture theater, so Mario **took off** his sweater.

take off
remove (a piece of clothing)



Alex **put on** her prettiest dress to go out for her wedding anniversary.

put on
wear a piece of clothing



Make sure you **wrap up** before heading out into that cold weather.

wrap up
wear certain clothes to keep you warm



Maurice **hung up** his coat as he walked in.

hang up
place a piece of clothing on a hook or hanger



Zane **folded up** his clothes and put them in the wardrobe.

fold up
make a piece of clothing smaller by folding it neatly



The sun is really strong today, so make sure you **cover up**.

cover up
protect your skin with clothing



Marlon **zipped up** his leather jacket and walked toward the door.

zip up
fasten the zipper on a piece of clothing



Aa

6.2 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Angelica helped her son to button up his shirt as he got ready for school.

1



As Hasan was running across the school yard, one of his shoes came off.

2



All the children at the party had dressed up as dinosaurs.

3



I hope this juice stain comes out when I wash my shirt.

4



Maurice hung up his coat as he walked in.

Aa

6.3 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

I hope this juice stain comes out when I wash my shirt.



I hope this juice stain comes in when I wash my shirt.



1 Marlon zipped up his leather jacket and walked toward the door.



Marlon zipped down his leather jacket and walked toward the door.



2 Gemma's shoes go really well about that dress.



Gemma's shoes go really well with that dress.



3 Arnie's so proud of his new jacket. He's been showing it on over everyone.



Arnie's so proud of his new jacket. He's been showing it off to everyone.



4 Zane folded up his clothes and put them in the wardrobe.



Zane folded away his clothes and put them in the wardrobe.





6.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A It was very hot in the lecture theater, so Mario took off his sweater. ☐
- B The jacket is too tight. We need to let it out a bit. ☐
- C All the children at the party had dressed up as dinosaurs. ☒ 1
- D This dress is a bit too big. We'll need to take it in a little. ☐
- E Make sure you wrap up before heading out into that cold weather. ☐
- F When Tom realized he was late, he threw on a jacket and tie, and ran for the bus. ☐
- G Angelica helped her son to button up his shirt as he got ready for school. ☐

Aa

6.5 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING PHRASAL VERBS



Carly's shoes are too big for her, but she'll grow into them.



3 The sun is really strong today, so make sure you _____.



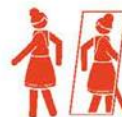
1 Mirek _____ his coat to keep out the icy breeze.



4 Gio's _____ his sweater, so he's going to give it to his little brother.



2 Kelly stopped to _____ one of her shoe laces.



5 Alex _____ her prettiest dress to go out for her wedding anniversary.

07 Before and after

7.1 CAUSE AND EFFECT

Heavy traffic has **impacted** badly on the city's air quality.

impact on
have a strong effect on something



The heavy rain **resulted in** floods throughout the city.

result in
cause something to happen



Scientists think that an asteroid colliding with Earth caused the dinosaurs to **die out**.

die out
disappear, become extinct



Due to her injury, Colleen had to **face up to** the fact that she couldn't play in the match.

face up to
accept and deal with a bad situation



The discovery of some ancient ruins has **led to** an increase in tourism.

lead to
cause something to happen



The invention of the computer **brought about** the end of the typewriter.

bring about
cause something to happen



7.2 MAKING COMPARISONS

Old cell phones can't **compete with** today's smartphones.

compete with
be as good as something else



To get into college, you'll need to **improve on** last year's results.

improve on
do something better than before



Sanjay got 100% on his exam. He more than **measured up to** his parents' expectations.

measure up (to)
be as good as people had hoped



The new action movie really **lived up to** the crowd's expectations.

live up to
be as good as people had hoped



Aa

7.3 MATCH UP THE PAIRS OF SENTENCES THAT MEAN THE SAME THING

The heavy rain resulted in floods throughout the city.

Old cell phones aren't as good as today's smartphones.

1 Heavy traffic has impacted badly on the city's air quality.

The heavy rain caused floods throughout the city.

2 Old cell phones can't compete with today's smartphones.

Due to her injury, Colleen had to accept the fact that she couldn't play in the match.

3 Due to her injury, Colleen had to face up to the fact that she couldn't play in the match.

To get into college, you'll need to get better results than you got last year.

4 To get into college, you'll need to improve on last year's results.

Heavy traffic has had a strong effect on the city's air quality.



7.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



Scientists think that an asteroid colliding with Earth caused the dinosaurs to die out.



1 Sanjay got 100% on his exam. He more than _____ his parents' expectations.



2 The new action movie really _____ the crowd's expectations.



3 The discovery of some ancient ruins has _____ an increase in tourism.



4 The invention of the computer _____ the end of the typewriter.



5 The heavy rain _____ floods throughout the city.

08 Everyday life

8.1 DAILY ROUTINE

My alarm **goes off** at 7am every morning during the week.

go off
begin ringing (about an alarm clock)



Orla went to the bathroom to **freshen up** before going out.

freshen up
make yourself look clean and tidy



I usually **head off to** work at 8 in the morning.

head off (to)
leave, begin a journey



Kieran **woke up** in the middle of the night when he heard a noise outside.

wake up
stop sleeping, become alert



In the evening, I often don't **get in** until after 7pm.

get in
arrive home



Nico usually **gets up** at about 10am on Saturdays.

get up
get out of bed



8.4 PHRASAL VERBS ABOUT SLEEP

I tried to wake Mia when I saw she had **dozed off** at her desk.

doze off
fall asleep, often during the day



On Sunday mornings, I sometimes **sleep in** as late as 11am.

sleep in
sleep for a longer time than usual



Quite a few people **nodded off** during the speech.

nod off
fall asleep (without meaning to)



Hanif **slept through** his alarm again. He's going to be late for work.

sleep through
not wake up when your alarm rings



See also:
 drop off 9 get in 9, 53 get up 53
 go off 3, 27, 30, 35 head off (to) 5

8.2 RELAXING

When Noel got home from work, he **sat down** and read a book.

sit down
 take a sitting position



Sara was feeling tired, so she **lay down** on the couch and tried to get some rest.

lie down
 take a lying position



Alfred spent the afternoon **pottering about** in the garden.

potter about
 do small tasks in a relaxed way



8.3 TASKS

Once the guests had left, Marco **set about** doing the dishes.

set about (UK)
 begin doing something (with energy or enthusiasm)



After a short break, Ramone **got on with** cleaning the bathroom.

get on with
 concentrate on doing something (usually after a break)



Martina **stayed up** late revising for her exam the following morning.

stay up
 go to bed later than usual



Uma is still **sleeping off** the effects of the anesthetic. She'll be able to see you soon.

sleep off
 sleep to allow you to recover from the effects of a drug



I'm exhausted. I know it's only half past eight, but I'm going to have to **turn in**.

turn in
 go to bed



Bradley is **sleeping over** at his cousin's house tonight. He's so excited about it.

sleep over
 sleep at someone else's house (usually about children)



After a long day at the office, Andrew **dropped off** in front of the TV.

drop off
 fall asleep



Aa

8.5 MATCH THE PHRASAL VERBS TO THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

	drop off	do small tasks in a relaxed way
1	sleep through	make yourself look clean and tidy
2	turn in	fall asleep
3	stay up	get out of bed
4	lie down	not wake up when your alarm rings
5	potter about	go to bed
6	freshen up	go to bed later than usual
7	get up	take a lying position



8.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR

stay up ☒ doze off ☐

1 sleep over ☐ set about ☐

2 turn in ☐ sleep in ☐

3 freshen up ☐ get in ☐

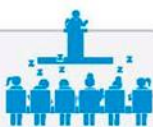
4 get up ☐ nod off ☐

5 head off ☐ go off ☐

Aa

8.7 WRITE THE PHRASAL VERBS FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

fall asleep (without meaning to)

nod off☐ fall asleep, often during the day☐ stop sleeping, become alert☐ take a sitting position☐ leave, begin a journey☐ begin doing something (with energy or enthusiasm)

wake up

sit down

doze off

set about

~~nod off~~

head off (to)

Aa

8.8 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

get

don't

in

In the evening, I often don't get in until after 7pm.

on

got

with

① After a short break, Ramone _____ cleaning the bathroom.

up

late

stayed

② Martina _____ studying for her exam the following morning.

dozed

at

off

③ I tried to wake Mia when I saw she had _____ her desk.

off

nodded

during

④ Quite a few people _____ the speech.

09 Transportation

9.1 VEHICLES

Christina's motorcycle **broke down** while she was traveling through the desert.

break down
stop working



Clive tried to restart the motorboat's engine after it **cut out** without any warning.

cut out
suddenly stop working



Angelo left his house and **got into** the taxi.

get in(to)
enter (a car or taxi)



As the movie star **got out of** the limousine, photographers surrounded him.

get out (of)
exit (a car or taxi)



George and Yolanda **got on** the train to Paris.

get on
enter (public transportation)



Gina **got off** the bus when it arrived at her stop.

get off
exit (public transportation)



9.2 DRIVING

George checked the road for other vehicles before **driving off**.

drive off
drive away, leave



Tanya **turned off** the main road and drove along the track to the beach.

turn off
leave a road and drive onto a different one



Jen **turned back** when she realized that she had forgotten her phone.

turn back
return in the direction you have just come from



When you reach the castle, **turn onto** the highway and head west.

turn onto
join a road from a different one



See also: break down 46, 50 cut out 37 drop off 8 get in 8, 53
get off 22 get on 2, 15 get out 53, 56 pick up 10, 11, 28, 31, 38
pull over 13 pull up 28 take off 5, 6, 22, 55 turn off 27

Kamal **dropped** me **off** at the train station on his way to work.

drop off
take a person somewhere in a car and leave them there



Sally **picked** her friends **up** outside the movie theater at 9pm.

pick up
go to collect someone (usually in a car)



You should always **slow down** when you drive past a school.

slow down
go more slowly



The train left the station slowly, before **speeding up** as it headed to the coast.

speed up
go more quickly



The helicopter **took off** from the top of the skyscraper.

take off
begin to fly



The plane **touched down** in Dubai at 9pm in the evening.

touch down
land



We **pulled in** at a small roadside café, where we could have some breakfast.

pull in(to)
stop and park somewhere



I **pulled up** by the train station to let my daughter out.

pull up
stop driving (often for a short time)



Marion didn't notice the motorcycle as she **pulled out of** the junction.

pull out (of)
move from one road to another



I got lost driving to your house. I had to **pull over** and ask for directions.

pull over
drive to the side of the road and stop



Aa

9.3 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



The helicopter took off from the top of the skyscraper.

1



George checked the road for other vehicles before driving off.

2



Gina got off the bus when it arrived at her stop.

3



I got lost driving to your house. I had to pull over and ask for directions.

4



The train left the station slowly, before speeding up as it headed to the coast.

5



Tanya turned off the main road and drove along the track to the beach.

Aa

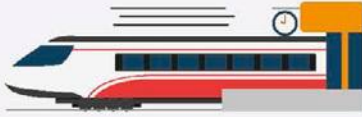
9.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Gina got ~~up~~ / ~~off~~ / ~~through~~ the bus when it arrived at her stop.

- 1 Jen turned ~~down~~ / ~~back~~ / ~~up~~ when she realized that she had forgotten her phone.
- 2 I pulled ~~up~~ / ~~down~~ / ~~out~~ by the train station to let my daughter out.
- 3 Sally picked her friends ~~on~~ / ~~in~~ / ~~up~~ outside the movie theater at 9pm.
- 4 When you reach the castle, turn ~~over~~ / ~~onto~~ / ~~with~~ the highway and head west.
- 5 Jamie dropped me ~~off~~ / ~~on~~ / ~~in~~ at the train station on his way to work.
- 6 Angelo left his house and got ~~into~~ / ~~over~~ / ~~up~~ the taxi.
- 7 Marion didn't notice the motorcycle as she pulled ~~over on~~ / ~~out of~~ / ~~up to~~ the junction.



9.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



The train left the station slowly, before speeding up as it headed to the coast.



3 The plane _____ in Dubai at 9pm in the evening.



1 As the movie star _____ the limousine, photographers surrounded him.



4 You should always _____ when you drive past a school.



2 We _____ at a small roadside café, where we could have some breakfast.



5 Clive tried to restart the motorboat's engine after it _____ without any warning.

Aa

9.6 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING THE MISSING LETTERS

begin to fly = t a k e o f f

- ☐ enter (public transportation) = g _ _ _ o _
- ☐ go more slowly = s _ _ _ _ d _ _ _
- ☐ stop working = b _ _ _ _ d _ _ _
- ☐ drive away, leave = d _ _ _ _ o _ _ _
- ☐ join a road from a different one = t _ _ _ _ o _ _ _

10 Shopping

10.1 SHOPPING

Once Ellie had found a scarf that she liked, she went to **check out**.

check out (US)
pay



Ellie used her credit card to **pay for** the scarf.

pay for
give money for something you are buying

Peter **bought up** all the pizzas in the store before his party.

buy up
buy the entire supply
of something



Aziz had been **looking around** the store for ages, but couldn't find a shirt he liked.

look around
visit a place and see
what is there



Joshua **crossed off** each item on the shopping list as he found it.

cross off
put a line through a word in a list



Luis put the melon in his basket and **checked it off** his shopping list.

check off (US)
put a check mark next to a word in a list



Kemal **knocked down** the price of jewelry by 15% to attract shoppers to his new store.

knock down
reduce prices



I bought my new laptop online, and went to **pick it up** at my local store the following day.

pick up
collect an item that you bought online



My favorite author has just **brought out** a new novel.

bring out
put a new product on sale



Fans are **lining up** outside the bookstore to buy it.

line up
wait in a line for something

Ethan's going camping this weekend, so he's **stocking up on** insect repellent.

stock up (on)

buy a lot of something in case you need it



The mugs I bought online are broken. I'm going to **send them back**.

send back

return an item to the seller by mail



Before buying a new car, it's worth **shopping around**. You might find a bargain.

shop around

visit several stores (or websites) to compare their products and prices



Aisha decided to **splash out on** clothes for her summer vacation.

splash out (on)

spend a lot of money without thinking too much about it



I went to the market to buy some bread, but they had **sold out**.

sell out (of)

sell all the available items



Marta couldn't wait to **try out** her new games console.

try out

try a new product to see what it is like



Carla didn't like the sweater she'd bought, so she decided to **take it back**.

take back

return a product to the store where you bought it



Shoppers had already **snapped up** all the bargains at the sale by the time I'd arrived.

snap up

buy something quickly, as soon as it becomes available



The fitting rooms are over there if you'd like to **try it on**.

try on

wear an item of clothing to see if it fits



Aa

10.2 MATCH UP THE PAIRS OF SENTENCES THAT MEAN THE SAME THING

My favorite author has just brought out a new novel.

The mugs I bought online are broken. I'm going to return them to the seller by mail.

1 The fitting rooms are over there if you'd like to try it on.

My favorite author has just put a new novel on sale.

2 The mugs I bought online are broken. I'm going to send them back.

I went to the market to buy some bread, but all the bread had been sold.

3 I bought my new laptop online, and went to pick it up at my local store.

The fitting rooms are over there if you'd like to wear the clothes to see if they fit.

4 Before buying a new car, it's worth shopping around to find a bargain.

I bought my new laptop online, and went to collect it from my local store.

5 I went to the market to buy some bread, but they had sold out.

Before buying a new car, it's worth visiting several stores to compare prices.

Aa

10.3 WRITE THE PHRASAL VERBS FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

mail an item back to the seller

send back



☐ put a line through a word in a list



☐ wait in a line for something



☐ sell all the available items



☐ buy a lot of something in case you need it



☐ buy something quickly, as soon as it becomes available



cross off

snap up

line up

sell out (of)

~~send back~~

stock up (on)



10.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



Before buying a new car, it's worth shopping around. You might find a bargain.



1 Marta couldn't wait to _____ her new games console.



2 Kemal _____ the price of jewelry by 15% to attract shoppers to his new store.



3 Luis put the melon in his basket and _____ his shopping list.



4 Aisha decided to _____ clothes for her summer vacation.



5 Ellie used her credit card to _____ the scarf.

Aa

10.5 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL TO CREATE PHRASAL VERBS

Peter bought up all the pizzas in the store before his party.

1 Aziz had been looking the store for ages, but couldn't find a shirt he liked.

2 Shoppers had already snapped all the bargains at the sale by the time I'd arrived.

3 Once Ellie had found a scarf that she liked, she went to check.

4 Carla didn't like the sweater she'd bought, so she decided to take it.

5 Joshua crossed each item on the shopping list as he found it.

up

back

~~up~~

off

out

around

11 The weather

11.1 THE WEATHER

As dark storm clouds **rolled in** from the east, Arthur tried to get home before the rain started.

roll in
(about bad weather)
approach, come nearer



It looks like the weather's **clearing up**. We'll be able to start the game again soon.

clear up
(about weather) improve,
become less cloudy



The weather's been awful, but it's finally starting to **brighten up**.

brighten up
become sunnier, less cloudy



Chris and Mel had to leave the beach when it started **bucketing down**.

bucket down
rain very heavily (informal)



Once the storm had **calmed down**, Grace checked her house for damage.

calm down
become less stormy or windy



Minutes after Ben had lit the grill, the sky **clouded over**. He hoped it wouldn't rain.

cloud over
become more cloudy



Don't go outside yet, Pamela.
It's **pouring down**!

pour down
rain heavily



Oh, thanks Martin.
I'll wait until it **eases off** a bit.

ease off
become less strong or intense

See also:

brighten up 45 calm down 45 clear up 32, 50
cool down 11 pick up 9, 10, 28, 31, 38 warm up 33

The wind's **picking up**. It's perfect weather for flying a kite.

pick up
increase, become stronger



As soon as the storm had **blown over**, the hikers left the cave and continued walking.

blow over
(about a storm) move away



Alice likes to sit on the balcony when the weather **cools down** in the evening.

cool down
become cooler



After days of bad weather, the rain finally started to **let up**.

let up
become less severe



People go ice-skating when the lake **freezes over** in the winter.

freeze over
completely freeze



Ella stood in a bus shelter waiting for the wind to **die down**.

die down
(about a storm or wind) become calmer



Today **started off** nicely, so we ate our breakfast on the terrace.

start off
begin



By the end of May, the weather starts to **warm up** and the tourists start to arrive.

warm up
become warmer



Aa

11.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

Don't go outside yet, Pamela. It's pouring down!



Don't go outside yet, Pamela. It's pouring up!



1 Today started off nicely, so we ate our breakfast on the terrace.



Today started on nicely, so we ate our breakfast on the terrace.



2 After days of bad weather, the rain finally started to let down.



After days of bad weather, the rain finally started to let up.



3 Chris and Mel had to leave the beach when it started bucketing under.



Chris and Mel had to leave the beach when it started bucketing down.



4 The weather's been awful, but it's finally starting to brighten up.



The weather's been awful, but it's finally starting to brighten off.



Aa

11.3 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



The wind's picking up. It's perfect weather for flying a kite.

1



Ella stood in a bus shelter waiting for the wind to die down.

2



Minutes after Ben had lit the grill, the sky clouded over.

3



People go ice-skating when the lake freezes over in the winter.

4



Alice likes to sit on the balcony when the weather cools down in the evening.

11.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Minutes after Ben had lit the grill, the sky **clouded off**. He hoped it wouldn't rain.

Minutes after Ben had lit the grill, the sky clouded over. He hoped it wouldn't rain.

- 1 As soon as the storm had **blown under**, the hikers left the cave and continued walking.

- 2 As dark storm clouds **rolled out** from the east, Arthur tried to get home before the rain started.

- 3 It looks like the weather's **clearing off**. We'll be able to start the game again soon.

- 4 By the end of May, the weather starts to **warm around** and the tourists start to arrive.

- 5 Once the storm had **calmed up**, Grace checked her house for damage.



11.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A ☐B ☒C ☐D ☐E ☐F ☐G ☐H ☐

12 Technology

12.1 COMPUTER SYSTEMS

To access your account, **log in** with your username and password.

log in(to)
enter an account or system



As soon as Sherelle gets into work, she **boots up** her computer.

boot up (UK)
(about a computer) start, turn on



This is the third time that our system has **gone down** this morning!

go down
(about a network) stop working



Some criminals **hacked into** our computer system and stole the new designs.

hack into
access a computer or network illegally



Always make sure you **log out of** your account after using it, so hackers can't steal your data.

log out (of)
leave an account or system



You should **shut down** your computer at night to save electricity.

shut down
(about a computer) turn off



I **back up** all my photos in case my computer breaks. I keep them on an external hard drive.

back up
make a copy of something



Our company hired a technician to **set up** the new printer.

set up
get something ready to use



12.3 NEW PRODUCTS

My office has started **rolling out** some new software. People are very confused by it.

roll out
(about a product) introduce



The new phone model **came out** today. There was a long line outside the store.

come out
(about a product) be released



See also:

back up 44 come out 5, 6, 12, 41, 52

go down 32, 54 set up 3, 53

12.2 USING TECHNOLOGY

Pete **scrolled up to** the top of the document to find the company's address.

scroll up (to)
move toward the top (of a page)



I had to **scroll down to** the bottom of the page to find the information I was looking for.

scroll down (to)
move toward the bottom (of a page)



When Amy **zoomed in**, she noticed the red car in front of the restaurant.

zoom in
get a closer view of something



Amy **zoomed out** to look at the whole picture.

zoom out
get a more distant view of something



You have to **type in** your password to access the website.

type in
enter information using a keyboard



I **type out** my essays because it's quicker than writing them by hand.

type out
write a piece of text using a keyboard



If you **click on** the link at the bottom of the page, you will see the answers.

click on
select something on a computer screen



I **printed out** a copy of the contract for the clients to sign.

print out
make a paper copy of a text



The company has started **phasing in** new computers. They look great!

phase in
(about a product)
introduce slowly



I agree. I'm so glad that they're **phasing out** these old models out.

phase out
(about a product) replace slowly





12.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A As soon as Sherelle gets into work, she boots up her computer. ☐
- B When Amy zoomed in, she noticed the red car in front of the restaurant. ☒
- C I had to scroll down to the bottom of the page to find the information I was looking for. ☐
- D I printed out a copy of the contract for the clients to sign. ☐
- E This is the third time that our system has gone down this morning! ☐
- F The new phone model came out today. There was a long line outside the store. ☐
- G To access your account, log in with your username and password. ☐

Aa

12.5 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Some criminals hacked into our computer system and stole the new designs.



My office has started rolling out some new software. People are very confused by it.



Pete scrolled up to the top of the document to find the company's address.



When Amy zoomed in, she noticed the red car in front of the restaurant.

Aa

12.6 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL

This is the third time that our system has gone down this morning!

- ① You should _____ your computer at night to save electricity.
- ② _____ the link at the bottom of the page to see the answers.
- ③ I _____ all my photos in case my computer breaks.
- ④ Always make sure you _____ of your account after using it.
- ⑤ The company has started _____ new computers. They look great!

click on

log out

phasing in

~~gone down~~

shut down

back up

Aa

12.7 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

To access your account, **log off** with your username and password.

To access your account, log in with your username and password.



- ① I **type in** my essays because it's quicker than writing them by hand.



- ② I **printed up** a copy of the contract for the clients to sign.



- ③ Our company hired a technician to **put up** the new printer.



- ④ You have to **type down** your password to access the website.



- ⑤ Amy **zoomed up** to look at the whole picture at once.



13 Crime, the law, and politics

13.1 CRIME AND THE LAW

Gustav **broke out of** prison by digging a hole under the main wall.

break out (of)
escape from a prison



Someone **broke into** my house and stole all my jewelry.

break in(to)
enter a building to steal something



Phil had to go to the hospital after somebody **beat him up**.

beat up
injure someone by hitting them repeatedly



The police ordered the criminal to **hand over** the stolen money.

hand over
return something to its owner



The police are **cracking down on** illegal parking in the city.

crack down (on)
become stricter about existing rules



Janice is leading a campaign to **stamp out** littering in the park.

stamp out
make something bad or unpleasant stop happening



The police **cordoned off** the area where the crime had taken place.

cordon off
use a barrier to stop people from entering an area



Dan **tipped off** the police about the location of the stolen artworks.

tip off
give someone information anonymously



After robbing the store, the thieves **got away** in a stolen car.

get away
escape



The police could **tell from** the tire tracks that the thieves had escaped by car.

tell from
draw a conclusion from evidence



See also:

get away 35 pull over 9

turn to 21, 45, 50

The local government has **brought in** a new law banning cars from entering the city center.

bring in
introduce a new law



Watch out for pickpockets when you're on the train!

watch out for
be aware of potential danger



While I was driving home, the traffic police **pulled me over** for speeding.

pull over
make a driver stop for doing something illegal



The detectives **tracked down** the thief using fingerprints on the door handle.

track down
work to find something or someone



My brother **turned to** crime after he lost his job.

turn to
start doing something different



13.2 POLITICS

Activists are **calling on** the government to protect the country's forests.

call on
ask someone publicly to do something



Senators **voted on** the new law after a long debate.

vote on
make a decision about a law using a vote



The protestors are **calling for** better public transportation in the town.

call for
ask publicly for something to happen



One of my old school friends is **running for** mayor.

run for
be a candidate for a political position



I'm definitely going to **vote for** her.

vote for
support something or someone by using a vote



13.3 MATCH UP THE PAIRS OF SENTENCES THAT MEAN THE SAME THING

Someone broke into my house and stole all my jewelry.

The police stopped people from entering the area where the crime had taken place.

1 One of my old school friends is running for mayor.

Someone entered my house without permission and stole all my jewelry.

2 The police cordoned off the area where the crime had taken place.

The police are becoming stricter on illegal parking in the city.

3 After robbing the store, the thieves got away in a stolen car.

Be aware of pickpockets when you're on the train!

4 Watch out for pickpockets when you're on the train!

Activists are asking the government publicly to protect the country's forests.

5 The police are cracking down on illegal parking in the city.

One of my old school friends is a candidate for mayor.

6 Activists are calling on the government to protect the country's forests.

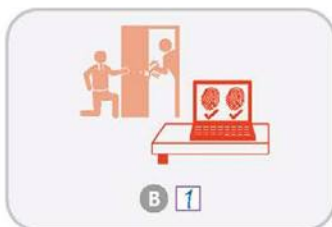
After robbing the store, the thieves escaped in a stolen car.



13.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



A ☐



B ☒ 1



C ☐



D ☐



E ☐



F ☐



G ☐



H ☐

Aa

13.5 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



Gustav broke out of prison by digging a hole under the main wall. ☒

Gustav smashed out of prison by digging a hole under the main wall. ☐



1 The police ordered the criminal to foot over the stolen money. ☐

The police ordered the criminal to hand over the stolen money. ☐



2 Senators voted on the new law after a long debate. ☐

Senators voted about the new law after a long debate. ☐



3 Janice is leading a campaign to stamp out littering in the park. ☐

Janice is leading a campaign to stamp on littering in the park. ☐



4 While I was driving home, the traffic police grabbed me over for speeding. ☐

While I was driving home, the traffic police pulled me over for speeding. ☐



5 Dan tipped off the police about the location of the stolen artworks. ☐

Dan tipped up the police about the location of the stolen artworks. ☐

Aa

13.6 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

draw a conclusion from evidence

=

tell from
☐ support something or someone by using a vote

=

☐ start doing something different

=

☐ work to find something or someone

=

☐ injure someone by hitting them repeatedly

=

☐ introduce a new law

=

☐ ask publicly for something to happen

=

14 Money

14.1 MONEY

Dan has owed me £200 for six months, but he's finally **paid up**.

pay up
return (usually unwillingly) all
the money you have borrowed



I've decided to **cut back on** spending by bringing my own lunch to work.

cut back (on)
reduce the amount of money
you spend



I **came into** a lot of money when my grandfather died.

come into
receive suddenly; inherit



Sara has finally **coughed up** the money I lent her last year.

cough up
give money you owe (reluctantly)



I lent Jenny \$20 yesterday and she **paid me back** today.

pay back
return the money you have borrowed



Tommy had to **fork out** more than \$600 to get his car repaired.

fork out (for)
spend a lot of money on something



Nura asked Craig's friends to **chip in** \$5 each toward his birthday present.

chip in
each contribute money



More than a million dollars was **wiped off** the price of our company this morning.

wipe off
reduce in value



Gary **lives off** the money that he inherited from his aunt. He does not need to work.

live off
get enough money from somewhere
to pay for all the things you need



I try to **live on** half my paycheck every month so I can save the rest.

live on
have a limited amount of money
to buy the things you need



See also:

add up 25, 41 come to 24 cut back 28 pay off 26
run into 26 take out 3, 21, 28 wipe off 21

The cost of the new stadium has already **run into** the millions.

run into
allow a debt or bill to increase
to a certain amount



Tara and Ali are **saving up** for a new house. They try to save \$300 each month.

save up
save money (for something
in particular)



Try to pay your bills as soon as they arrive. They can soon **add up**.

add up
accumulate, build up



Patrick went to the bank to **pay in** some cash.

pay in(to)
put money in a bank



Pete went to the ATM to **take out** some cash.

take out
withdraw money from a bank



Nick doesn't earn much money, but it's enough to **get by**.

get by
have just enough money to survive



The food was excellent, but we were shocked when the bill **came to** more than \$200.

come to
reach a certain amount



Wayne paid for everyone's lunches yesterday, so we **settled up** with him today.

settle up (with)
pay someone what you owe them



Colin has **run up** some huge debts renovating his house.

run up
allow a debt or bill
to increase



He doesn't know how he's going to **pay them off**.

pay off
finish giving back the money
you have borrowed



Aa 14.2 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

I lent Jenny \$20 yesterday and she paid me back today.

- ☐ Jenny threw away \$20. ☐
- ☒ Jenny returned \$20 to me. ☒
- ☐ Jenny stole \$20 from me. ☐

1 More than a million dollars was wiped off the price of our company this morning.

- ☐ The company reduced in value. ☐
- ☐ The company rose in value. ☐
- ☐ The company shut down. ☐

2 Tommy had to fork out more than \$600 to get his car repaired.

- ☐ Tommy had to spend a lot of money. ☐
- ☐ Tommy had to save a lot of money. ☐
- ☐ Tommy had to borrow money. ☐

3 I came into a lot of money when my grandfather died.

- ☐ I lost a lot of money. ☐
- ☐ I inherited a lot of money. ☐
- ☐ I gave away a lot of money. ☐

4 Patrick went to the bank to pay in some cash.

- ☐ Patrick took money from a bank. ☐
- ☐ Patrick put money into a bank. ☐
- ☐ Patrick robbed a bank. ☐

5 Wayne paid for everyone's lunches yesterday, so we settled up with him today.

- ☐ We took money from Wayne. ☐
- ☐ We shared money with Wayne. ☐
- ☐ We paid Wayne what we owed him. ☐

Aa 14.3 WRITE THE PHRASAL VERBS FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

have just enough money to survive

get by



☐ return all the money you have borrowed (usually unwillingly)



☐ reduce in value



☐ allow a debt or bill to increase



☐ each contribute money



☐ have a limited amount of money to buy the things you need



☐ save money (for something in particular)



pay up

~~get by~~

live on

run up

chip in

save up

wipe off

14.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

He doesn't know how he's going to **pay** them **over**.

He doesn't know how he's going to pay them off.

- 1 Sara has finally **coughed on** the money I lent her last year.

- 2 I've decided to **cut down for** spending by bringing my own lunch to work.

- 3 The food was excellent, but we were shocked when the bill **went to** more than \$200.

- 4 The cost of the new stadium has already **run through** the millions.

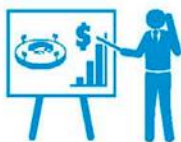
- 5 Try to pay your bills as soon as they arrive. They can soon **add on**.



14.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND WRITE THE SENTENCES BELOW THE IMAGES



*Gary lives off the money
that he inherited.*



1 _____



2 _____



3 _____



4 _____



5 _____

15 Time

15.1 TIME

The journey **dragged on** for hours.
The kids were so bored!

drag on
continue for a long time (negative)



Time's **getting on** now. Let's hurry
home before it gets dark.

get on (UK)
become late (about the time)



We take the children to the park every
afternoon to **break up** the day.

break up
*break (a day or period of
time) into separate parts*



The doctor's busy at the moment, but
I'll try to **fit you in** later today.

fit in
make time for something



Mikhail **dragged out** his speech for
so long that some of the audience
fell asleep.

drag out
make something last too long (negative)



As the years **went by**, I grew to love
Phil's sense of humor.

go by
pass (about time)



The deadline for the project
crept up on us.

creep up (on)
*happen slowly to someone
without them noticing it*



I enjoy **whiling away** the hours reading
novels and comic books.

while away
pass the time in a relaxed way



15.2 WAITING

Hi Sally! Can you **hang on** a minute
while I grab my umbrella?

hang on
wait for a short time (informal)



The service here is terrible!
It's **holding** everyone **up**.

hold up
make someone or something late



See also:

break up 3, 21, 29, 38 creep up on 51 fit in 15
get on 2, 9 go by 54 run out (of) 30 take up 31, 55

Danny wasn't able to finish the exam because he **ran out of** time.

run out (of)
have no more (time)



Cleaning the house **took up** all of Liam's weekend.

take up
occupy, use up (someone's time)



Your session has **timed out**. Please log in again.

time out
log someone out of a computer, server, or website because of inactivity



Commuting to and from work really **eats into** my time.

eat into
take up too much (of someone's time)



Hurry up, Oliver! The train's going to leave soon!

hurry up
move or do something more quickly



I can't believe how quickly winter's **come around** again!

come around
happen again (about a regular event)



Our professor always **draws out** our lectures by answering lots of questions at the end.

draw out
make something last longer than necessary



Quitting my job at the café has **freed up** more time for my studies.

free up
make more time available



Chris was sitting in the café **waiting for** his girlfriend to arrive.

wait for
stay somewhere or delay something until something happens



When the train was canceled, the passengers had to **wait around for** the next one.

wait around (for)
do nothing until something happens



Winter's come around again so quickly!

Winter is over. ☐

Winter has started again. ☒

Winter is yet to begin. ☐

1 Hurry up, Oliver! The train's going to leave soon!

☐ Slow down, Oliver.

Stop walking, Oliver. ☐

Move more quickly, Oliver. ☐

2 Quitting my job has freed up time for my studies.

☐ I have more time for my studies. ☐

I have less time for my studies. ☐

I have no time for my studies. ☐

3 As the years went by, I grew to love Phil.

☐ I began to love Phil. ☐

I do not love Phil. ☐

I have always loved Phil. ☐

4 Our professor always draws out our lectures.

☐ He keeps lectures short. ☐

He makes lectures last longer. ☐

He refuses to give lectures. ☐

5 I enjoy whiling away the hours reading.

☐ I read very fast. ☐

I read for very little time. ☐

I like to pass the time by reading. ☐

6 He ran out of time and could not finish the exam.

☐ He was given more time. ☐

He had no more time. ☐

He had some time left. ☐

7 Your session has timed out. Please log in again.

☐ Your session has ended due to inactivity. ☐

Your session is still in progress. ☐

Your session has not begun. ☐



15.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR



free up ☒ free down ☐



1 drag out ☐ drag in ☐



2 hurry in ☐ hurry up ☐



3 wait out ☐ wait for ☐



4 break up ☐ break in ☐



5 while over ☐ while away ☐

Aa 15.5 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL

As the years went by, I grew to love Phil's sense of humor.



① The journey _____ for hours. The kids were so bored.



② Commuting to and from work really _____ my time.



③ Cleaning the house _____ all of Liam's weekend.



④ The deadline for the project _____ us.



eats into

crept up on

~~went by~~

took up

dragged on

Aa 15.6 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

Passengers had to wait around for the next train.

wait

for

around

up

everyone

holding

① The service here is terrible! It's _____.

on

now

getting

② Time's _____ . Let's hurry home before it gets dark.

a

hang

on

③ Can you _____ minute while I grab my umbrella?

fit

in

you

④ The doctor's busy today, but I'll try to _____ tomorrow.

16 Past and future

16.1 FUTURE

The building project has just begun.
Months of construction work **lie ahead**
before it'll be finished.

lie ahead
be in the future



Elly and George are **looking forward**
to going to the beach later.

look forward to
wait for something with excitement



All the streets were decorated in the
weeks **leading up to** the festival.

lead up to
happen in the period
before an event



Colin is working hard because the
deadline for his article is **coming up**.

come up
approach, happen soon



Kira had dreamed of becoming a great
actor, but her plans didn't **pan out**.

pan out
develop, become successful



16.2 MEMORY

Being at the beach **stirs up** memories
of vacations with my grandmother.

stir up
make someone think about the past



Roland **looks back on** his college days
with pleasure.

look back (on)
remember, think about the past



Finding my old toys **brought back** happy
memories of my childhood.

bring back
make someone think about the past



16.3 CHANGE AND RESCHEDULING

The house was **turned into** a convenience
store in the 1980s.

turn into
become, transform into



We are planning to **turn it back into**
a house and live there.

turn back into
return to its original form



See also:

bring back 35 come up 36, 50, 52 go back 35, 54
push back 43 take back 10, 44, 55

When I recognized Roshan, memories of our days in Delhi came **flooding back**.

flood back

*suddenly come into someone's mind
(about memories or emotions)*



Peter **reminds** me **of** you when you were a little boy.

remind of

make someone remember a person, place, or event from the past



I like to listen to music and **think back to** my days as a musician in Paris.

think back (to)

think about an event in the past



This dress **takes** me **back to** my childhood in the 1960s.

take back (to)

make someone think about the past



Many of the buildings in my city **date back to** the 19th century.

date back to

come into being at a particular time in the past



The doctor's off this afternoon, so could we **bring** your appointment **forward to** 11 o'clock this morning?

bring forward (to)

move to an earlier time



Claude is unwell today. We'll have to **push** our meeting **back to** tomorrow.

push back (to)

move an appointment to a later date, postpone



In my country, the clocks **go forward** one hour in the spring.

go forward

move forward



The clocks **go back** one hour in the fall.

go back

move backward

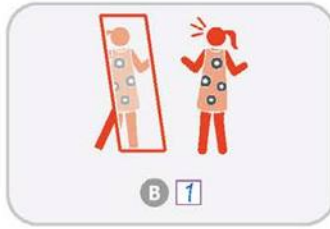




16.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



A ☐



B ☒



C ☐



D ☐



E ☐



F ☐



G ☐



H ☐

Aa

16.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

The house was turned ~~out~~ / **into** / ~~over~~ a convenience store in the 1980s.

- 1 In my country, the clocks go **forward** / ~~away~~ / ~~under~~ one hour in the spring.
- 2 The clocks go **back to** / ~~again in~~ / ~~back~~ one hour in the fall.
- 3 Elly and George are looking **on to** / ~~out of~~ / **forward to** going to the beach later.
- 4 Claude is unwell today. We'll have to push our meeting back ~~away~~ / **to** / ~~out~~ tomorrow.
- 5 Finding my old toys brought **back** / ~~over~~ / ~~in~~ happy memories of my childhood.
- 6 The building project has just begun. Months of construction work lie **ahead** / ~~under~~ / ~~above~~.
- 7 We are planning to turn the store back **around** / ~~over~~ / **into** a house and live there.
- 8 All the streets were decorated in the weeks leading **up** / ~~down~~ / ~~over~~ to the festival.

Aa 16.6 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Being at the beach stirs up memories | my childhood in the 1960s. |
| 1 This dress takes me back to | when you were a little boy. |
| 2 Kira had dreamed of becoming a | of vacations with my grandmother. |
| 3 Peter reminds me of you | a convenience store in the 1980s. |
| 4 Many of the buildings in my city | great actor, but her plans didn't pan out. |
| 5 The house was turned into | date back to the 19th century. |

Aa 16.7 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Many of the buildings in my city **date back on** the 19th century.

Many of the buildings in my city date back to the 19th century.



- 1 The doctor's off tomorrow, so could we **bring** your appointment **forward on** today?



- 2 Colin is working hard because the deadline for his article is **coming down**.



- 3 Roland **looks out on** his college days with pleasure.



- 4 All the streets were decorated in the weeks **leading over to** the festival.



- 5 I like to listen to music and **think forward to** my days as a musician in Paris.



- 6 The building project has just begun. Months of construction work **lie before**.



17 Making plans

17.1 MAKING PLANS

Kwang had been planning to study medicine, but **ended up** studying French.

end up
do something different to what you had originally planned



The negotiating teams stayed up until after midnight **hammering out** a new treaty.

hammer out
reach an agreement after much discussion



I asked Sabrina if she wanted to go camping, but she **threw out** the idea.

throw out
reject a suggestion or idea



My dad wanted to buy a motorcycle for ages, but I never expected him to **go through with it**.

go through with
do something you have planned to do (after some thought or discussion)



We want to get married in summer, but we haven't **pinned down** a location yet.

pin down
decide the details about something



Giovanni forgot about the art project, but he managed to **throw** something **together**.

throw together
do something without preparation



17.2 CANCELING PLANS

Ed had promised to do a bungee jump with me, but **backed out** at the last minute.

back out
not do something you had agreed to do



Adi always manages to **wriggle out of** helping with the cleaning.

wriggle out of
avoid doing something you should do (informal)

Dexter was going to ask Becky out on a date, but he **chickened out**.

chicken out
decide not to do something you had planned to do because you are afraid (informal)



You should **plan ahead** before setting off on a long car journey.

plan ahead
make plans before an event happens



Allow for traffic delays when estimating how long it'll take.

allow for
take something into consideration before making a plan

You need to **think ahead** and save some money for the future.

think ahead
think about the future and plan for it



The two directors had several meetings to **firm up** the details of the new contract.

firm up
make something more definite



We've been meaning to get a new kitchen for years, but we never **get around to** it.

get around to
find the time to do something



Look ahead and picture what you want to be doing in five years' time.

look ahead
think about what might happen in the future



The store **weaseled out of** giving us a refund by claiming we had broken the vase.

weasel out of
avoid doing something you had agreed to do in a sneaky way (informal)



Seb said he'd help me paint the house, but he **went back on** his promise.

go back on
fail to keep a promise or agreement



Cleo didn't want to go out, so she pretended to be sick to **get out of** it.

get out of
avoid doing something you had agreed to do



Aa 17.3 MATCH UP THE PAIRS OF SENTENCES THAT MEAN THE SAME THING

Seb said he'd help me paint the house, but he went back on his promise.

The two directors had several meetings to make the new contract more definite.

1 Allow for traffic delays when estimating how long the journey will take.

Seb said he'd help me paint the house, but he did not keep his promise.

2 We've been meaning to get a new kitchen for years, but we never get around to it.

I asked Sabrina if she wanted to go camping, but she rejected the idea.

3 Giovanni forgot about the art project, but he managed to throw something together.

We've been meaning to get a new kitchen for years, but haven't found the time for it.

4 The two directors had several meetings to firm up the details of the new contract.

Take traffic delays into consideration when estimating how long the journey will take.

5 I asked Sabrina if she wanted to go camping, but she threw out the idea.

The negotiating teams stayed up to discuss and reach an agreement on a new treaty.

6 The negotiating teams stayed up until after midnight hammering out a new treaty.

Giovanni forgot about the art project, but he managed to do it without preparation.

Aa 17.4 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL

We want to get married, but we haven't pinned down a location yet.



hammering out

1 They stayed up until after midnight _____ a new treaty.



think ahead

2 Cleo pretended to be sick to _____ going out.



~~pinned down~~

3 Dexter was going to ask Becky out, but he _____



get out of

4 You need to _____ and save money for the future.



chickened out

Aa

17.5 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING PHRASAL VERBS



Kwang had been planning to study medicine, but ended up studying French.



3 _____ and picture what you want to be doing in five years' time.



1 You should _____ before setting off on a long car journey.



4 The store _____ giving us a refund by claiming we had broken the vase.



2 Seb said he'd help me paint the house, but he _____ his promise.



5 Ed had promised to do a bungee jump with me, but _____ at the last minute.



17.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A My dad wanted to buy a motorcycle for ages, but I never expected him to go through with it. ☐
- B We want to get married in summer, but we haven't pinned down a location yet. ☐
- C I asked Sabrina if she wanted to go camping, but she threw out the idea. 1
- D We've been meaning to get a new kitchen for years, but we never get around to it. ☐
- E Kwang had been planning to study medicine, but ended up studying French. ☐
- F Seb said he'd help me paint the house, but he went back on his promise. ☐
- G Giovanni forgot about the art project, but he managed to throw something together. ☐

18 The senses

18.1 HEARING

Listen up! You're going to fail your exam unless you start working a bit harder.

listen up
pay attention



Dayita **listened to** the radio while she ate her breakfast.

listen to
pay attention to someone talking or something making a sound



Have you **heard about** the new gym in town? It's supposed to be great.

hear about
receive information about something



Andy hid behind the curtain so he could **listen in on** Carmen and Simon's conversation.

listen in (on)
secretly listen to someone



Marion asked her son to **listen out for** the doorbell while she was in the garden.

listen out for
listen attentively to hear a noise you are expecting



Please **hear me out!** I don't want to be a lawyer. I want to be an actor!

hear out
listen to someone without interrupting



18.2 SMELL AND TASTE

Alex's cookies **smelled of** cinnamon. I asked to try one.

smell of
have the smell of something



That journalist's been **sniffing around** again trying to find out what's going on.

sniff around
try to find information



Whatever Pablo has cooked is **stinking the whole house out.**

stink out
cause somewhere to smell unpleasant (informal)



This soup is delicious! It **tastes of** tomato and basil.

taste of
have the flavor of something



18.3 SIGHT

Robert has been **looking for** his glasses all afternoon. He can't find them anywhere.

look for
search for something



The geologist **looked at** each of the rocks. They were unlike anything he'd seen before.

look at
examine something



We all **looked on** in silence as the magician seemed to cut the person in half.

look on
watch something without taking part



While you're in the national park, **look out for** bald eagles near the rivers and lakes.

look out for
pay attention to notice something



The children **looked over** the wall, trying to see where the ball had landed.

look over
raise yourself to see past an obstacle



The scary scene in the movie made everyone **look away**.

look away
turn your eyes away from something



Sarah and Dionne **looked into** the well. There was no sign of the bottom.

look into
look at a hole, room, or hollow object to see what is inside



Marcus **looked through** his telescope to see the moon.

look through
look at one side of something to see what is on the other side



Vineeta's summer house has the perfect location. It **looks out over** a lake.

look out over
have a view of



Fiona **spied on** her colleagues to steal their ideas.

spy on
secretly watch someone



Aa

18.4 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

Fiona spied on her colleagues.

Fiona is a spy. ☐Fiona secretly watched her colleagues. ☒Fiona thinks her colleagues are spies. ☐

1 The soup tastes of tomato and basil.

☐ The soup has only tomato and basil in it. ☐The soup has a tomato and basil flavor. ☐The soup is missing tomato and basil. ☐

2 Marcus looked through his telescope.

☐ Marcus bought a telescope. ☐Marcus saw a telescope. ☐Marcus used his telescope. ☐

3 Robert looked for his glasses.

☐ Robert wanted his glasses back. ☐Robert searched for his glasses. ☐Robert bought new glasses. ☐

4 Please hear me out!

☐ Please listen to me! ☐Please come outside! ☐Please leave me alone! ☐

18.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MATCH THE IMAGES TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS



look at



taste of



listen in on



sniff around



look through



listen out for



stink out

Aa

18.6 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

watch something without taking part

= l o o k o n

☐ try to find information about someone or something

= s _ _ _ _ a _ _ _ _

☐ examine something

= l _ _ _ _ a _ _

☐ have a view of

= l _ _ _ _ o _ _ _ o _ _ _

☐ turn your eyes away from something

= l _ _ _ _ a _ _ _ _







Aa

18.7 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS

- | | | |
|---|--|----------------|
| 1 | secretly listen to someone | hear out |
| 2 | cause somewhere to smell unpleasant | listen up |
| 3 | pay attention to notice something | look over |
| 4 | receive information about something | stink out |
| 5 | pay attention | look out for |
| 6 | listen to someone without interrupting | look on |
| 7 | watch something without taking part | hear about |
| | | listen in (on) |

Aa

18.8 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL

- The scary scene in the movie made everyone look away. 
- 1 Alex's cookies _____ cinnamon. I asked to try one. 
- 2 Have you _____ the new gym in town? It's supposed to be great. 
- 3 Dayita _____ the radio while she ate her breakfast. 
- 4 Fiona _____ her colleagues to steal their ideas. 
- 5 Sarah and Dionne _____ the well. There was no sign of the bottom. 
- smelled of
 spied on
~~look away~~
 looked into
 listened to
 heard about

19 Movement and progress

19.1 MOVEMENT AND PROGRESS

Martin was exhausted, and began to **fall behind** the other runners.

fall behind
move more slowly than
the people around you



The rain made it hard for the hikers to keep going, but they **pressed on**.

press on
continue despite difficulties



Tanya **turned away** as the nurse gave her the injection.

turn away
turn your head or body so that you
are no longer facing something



The security guards told us to stop taking photos of the building and **move along**.

move along
leave a certain place (usually
said by someone in authority)



As the train **went through** the mountain range, Ted took some photographs.

go through
move through a room or space



There was a loud knock at the door. Hassan **stood up** and went to answer it.

stand up
rise from a seated position



The saleswoman **came up to** Fabio and asked if he needed any help.

come up to
approach someone, come
close to someone



As we **came down from** the summit, the weather became much worse.

come down (from)
move toward the ground
or bottom of something



The monkey **climbed up** the tree with Kazuo's camera.

climb up
move toward the top of something
(often using your arms as well as legs)



Kazuo got the monkey to **climb down** by offering it a banana.

climb down
move toward the bottom of something
(often using your arms as well as legs)



See also:

climb down 44 fall behind 20 get down 46, 53
go through 54 turn around 33 turn away 5

Terry **doubled back** when he realized he'd walked past the entrance to the gallery.

double back
turn around and go in the direction you just came from



When I heard someone calling my name, I **turned around**.

turn around
turn yourself so that you face the opposite direction



Clive **lifted** his daughter **up** so that she could see the deer.

lift up
raise someone or something



Doug **dropped back** to help one of the other hikers, who had injured himself.

drop back
start to move more slowly than others



Helen told her son to **get down from** the garden wall.

get down (from)
move to the ground or a lower position



19.2 PHRASAL VERBS WITH "WALK"

The visitors **walked around** the palace gardens.

walk around
move around a place on foot



The explorers **walked into** the cave.

walk in(to)
enter a room, building, or enclosed space on foot



A line of tourists slowly **walked over** the ancient bridge.

walk over
move over an object on foot



While we were chatting, Mani **walked off** without saying where he was going.

walk off
leave on foot (often without an explanation)



Janine grabbed her coat and **walked out of** the room.

walk out (of)
leave a room, building, or enclosed space on foot





19.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A**  While we were chatting, Mani walked off without saying where he was going. ☐
- B**  Terry doubled back when he realized he'd walked past the entrance to the gallery. ☐
- C**  There was a loud knock at the door. Hassan stood up and went to answer it. ☒ 1
- D**  The rain made it hard for the hikers to keep going, but they pressed on. ☐
- E**  The security guards told us to stop taking photos of the building and move along. ☐

Aa

19.4 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDING

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Janine grabbed her coat | down by offering it a banana. |
| 1 Kazuo got the monkey to climb | into the cave. |
| 2 The explorers walked | and walked out of the room. |
| 3 Doug dropped back to help one of | so that she could see the deer. |
| 4 As we came down from the summit, | the other hikers, who had injured himself. |
| 5 The saleswoman came up | the weather became much worse. |
| 6 Clive lifted his daughter up | to Fabio and asked if he needed any help. |

Aa

19.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



A line of tourists slowly walked ~~around~~ / ~~over~~ / ~~through~~ the ancient bridge.



1 When I heard someone calling my name, I turned ~~about~~ / ~~around~~ / ~~off~~.



2 Martin was exhausted, and began to ~~fall~~ / ~~run~~ / ~~jump~~ behind the other runners.



3 Clive lifted his daughter ~~over~~ / ~~down~~ / ~~up~~ so that she could see the deer.



4 Janine grabbed her coat and walked ~~back~~ / ~~out~~ / ~~down~~ of the room.



5 Doug dropped ~~out~~ / ~~in~~ / ~~back~~ to help one of the other hikers, who had injured himself.

Aa

19.6 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

the walked around

The visitors walked around the palace gardens.

away as turned

1 Tanya _____ the nurse gave her the injection.

climbed the up

2 The monkey _____ tree with Kazuo's camera.

get from down

3 Helen told her son to _____ the garden wall.

the through went

4 As the train _____ mountain range, Ted took some photographs.

20 Studying and research

20.1 STUDYING AND RESEARCH

I'm moving to Tokyo for a year. I need to **brush up on** my Japanese.

brush up on
practice, revise



The library was full of students **swotting up on** English grammar.

swot up on (UK)
(informal) study a subject



Fiona **worked through** the problems in her code to fix the issues.

work through
deal with a problem carefully and methodically



Patsy's research **focuses on** space travel.

focus on
give attention to



Nadia stayed up all night trying to **work out** the answer to the equation.

work out
solve a problem



I kept making mistakes trying to answer the question, so decided to **start over**.

start over (US)
start something again



Sam has **dived into** his new project. He spent all weekend working on it.

dive in(to)
start doing something with enthusiasm



She's **looking into** how astronauts might travel to Mars one day.

look into
investigate, research, or find out about something



20.2 MAKING A PRESENTATION

At the start of your presentation, **lay out** the main points you are going to discuss.

lay out
present or explain in a clear way



After introducing your topic, you should then **move on to** presenting each of your arguments.

move on (to)
proceed to the next point



See also:

fall behind 20 keep up with 33 look into 20
move on 45 work out 26, 33 work through 45

Hi, Arjun. Do you know what
"burdensome" means?



No, I don't. You'll have to
look it up in a dictionary.

look up

find information online or in a reference book

The practical assessment and
the written exam both **count
toward** your final grade.

count toward
contribute toward



Bill is trying to **cram in** as much studying
as possible before the exam.

cram in (UK)

fit a lot of something into a small
space or a short period of time



Emma was sick for most of the spring.
She has **fallen behind** the other
students in her year.

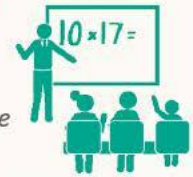
fall behind
not keep up with



Even though Leo is the youngest in his
class, he manages to **keep up
with** the other children.

keep up with

improve at the same speed as someone



Noah is **majoring in** international politics at college.
He hopes to become an ambassador one day.

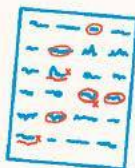
major in (US)

study something as your main subject at university



Please take care writing your presentation.
You'll be **marked down** for
incorrect spelling.

mark down
give someone a lower grade



At the end of your presentation, you
should **sum up** each of your conclusions.

sum up

give a summary of your argument
in the conclusion



20.3 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



I'm moving to Tokyo for a year. I need to brush up on my Japanese.



I'm moving to Tokyo for a year. I need to brush down my Japanese.



Leo is the youngest in his class, but manages to keep up with his classmates.



Leo is the youngest in his class, but manages to keep on at his classmates.



She's looking into how astronauts might travel to Mars one day.



She's looking onto how astronauts might travel to Mars one day.



Sam has dived off his new project. He spent all weekend working on it.



Sam has dived into his new project. He spent all weekend working on it.



The library was full of students swotting up on English grammar.



The library was full of students swotting out on English grammar.



At the start of your presentation, lay out the main points you are going to discuss.



At the start of your presentation, lay on the main points you are going to discuss.



20.4 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

the

work

out

Nadia stayed up all night trying to work out the answer to the equation.

in

majoring

is

1 Noah in majoring is international politics at college.

start

to

over

2 I kept making mistakes, so I decided start to over.

space

focuses

on

3 Patsy's research space focuses on travel.

through

the

worked

4 Fiona through the worked problems in her code to fix the issues.

Aa

20.5 READ THE ARTICLE AND WRITE THE PHRASAL VERBS ABOVE THEIR DEFINITIONS

1
_____ deal with a problem methodically

2
_____ proceed to the next point

3
_____ contribute toward

4
_____ give someone a lower grade

5
_____ give attention to

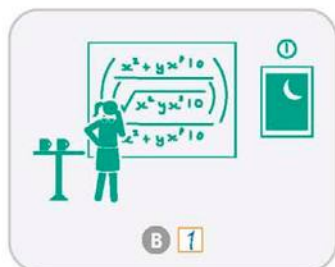
6
_____ present in a clear way

sum up
sum up your argument

How to structure a presentation:
At the start of your presentation, **lay out** the main points you are going to discuss. Then, **move on to** presenting each of your arguments clearly and succinctly. **Focus on** being coherent and logical as you speak, making sure to emphasize all important points. At the end of your presentation, you should finish by **summing up** each of your conclusions. Include time for interaction with the audience and **work through** all questions calmly and confidently. Take care when writing your presentation, as you will be **marked down** for incorrect spelling and this will **count toward** your final assessment.



20.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A ☐B ☐C ☐D ☐E ☐F ☐G ☐H ☐

21 At school

21.1 SCHOOL

Ola **dropped out** of high school without any qualifications, but she went on to become a successful businesswoman.

drop out

leave school or university without finishing your studies



Miguel **handed in** his assignment five minutes before the deadline.

hand in (to)

give a piece of work to a teacher, give something to someone in authority



The teacher **handed out** the worksheet to each member of the class.

hand out (to)

give something to each member of a group, distribute



The teacher **wiped** the notes **off** the board before Ed had finished copying them.

wipe off

remove something (with a cloth)



Schools **break up** in July in the UK.

There is a six-week summer holiday.

break up (UK)

close for the holidays



Ramu's **working on** a new art project. It's a huge painting of New York.

work on

spend time or put effort into something



When the class finished, Arun **packed up** his things and got ready to leave.

pack up

gather your things and put them in a bag or box



Good morning class.
Please **take out** your books.

take out

remove something (from a bag)



Now **turn to** page 25 and complete the exercises.



turn to

open a book at a specific page



See also:

break up 3, 15, 29, 38 mess around 41

take out 3, 14, 28 turn to 13, 45, 50 wipe off 14

21.2 BAD BEHAVIOR

You've spent too much time **goofing off** this semester, Jesse.

goof off (US)
waste time, avoid doing work



I will **not stand for** laziness. It's time you started working harder.

not stand for
not tolerate, not allow someone to do something

The kids have been **playing up** all morning.

play up (UK)
be naughty, misbehave



Ffion is so naughty. She's always **fooling around** in class instead of paying attention.

fool around
behave in a silly way



Despite the teacher's warnings, the children **carried on** misbehaving.

carry on
continue (doing something)



The teacher told his students to stop **messing around**, and to do their work.

mess around
misbehave, do something other than what you should be doing



Mateo and Juanita are very naughty, but Martina lets them **get away with** it.

get away with
do something wrong without being punished for it



Rosie is very rude to her teachers. She's always **answering back**.

answer back
respond rudely (usually to a teacher or parent)



Marco was furious about the broken window, but he **let** Gio and Carmen **off with** a warning.

let off (with)
not punish someone, or give them a very light punishment



Zosia **told** the children **off** when she saw the terrible mess they had made.

tell off
reprimand someone when they have done something wrong



Aa 21.3 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

Ramu's working on a new art project. ☐
 Ramu's thinking of a new art project. ☐
 Ramu's spending time on a new art project. ☒
 Ramu's interested in a new art project. ☐

- 1 Schools break up in July in the UK. ☐
☐ Schools open in July. ☐
 Schools organize events in July. ☐
 Schools close in July. ☐
- 2 Marco let Gio and Carmen off with a warning. ☐
☐ Marco punished Gio and Carmen. ☐
 Marco did not punish Gio and Carmen. ☐
 Marco chatted with Gio and Carmen. ☐
- 3 Zosia told the children off for the mess they had made. ☐
☐ Zosia congratulated the children. ☐
 Zosia reprimanded the children. ☐
 Zosia helped the children clean up. ☐
- 4 Rosie is always answering back to her teachers. ☐
☐ Rosie responds rudely to her teachers. ☐
 Rosie responds politely to her teachers. ☐
 Rosie does not respond to her teachers. ☐

Aa 21.4 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Miguel handed in his assignment just before the deadline.



Rosie is very rude. She's always answering back.



The teacher handed out the worksheet to each student.



After the class, Arun packed up his things and got ready to leave.



Ramu's working on a huge painting of New York.



21.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR

tell off ☒ play up ☐ drop out ☐

- | | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|--|
| 1 tell off <input type="checkbox"/> | not stand for <input type="checkbox"/> | get away with <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 hand in <input type="checkbox"/> | drop out <input type="checkbox"/> | take out <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 carry on <input type="checkbox"/> | answer back <input type="checkbox"/> | drop out <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 tell off <input type="checkbox"/> | take out <input type="checkbox"/> | play up <input type="checkbox"/> |

Aa

21.6 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

close for the holidays

=

break up

- ☐ give something to each member of a group
- ☐ remove something (with a cloth)
- ☐ not tolerate, not allow someone to do something
- ☐ leave school without finishing your studies
- ☐ look for a certain page

=

=

=

=

=

Aa

21.7 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL



Ola dropped out of school, but went on to become a successful businesswoman.



- ③ Despite the teacher's warnings, the children _____ misbehaving.



- ① Good morning class. Please _____ your books.



- ④ You've spent too much time _____ this semester, Jesse.



- ② The kids have been _____ all morning.



- ⑤ Mateo and Juanita are very naughty, but Martina lets them _____ it.

playing up

take out

goofing off

get away with

carried on

~~dropped out~~

22 At work

22.1 STARTING AND FINISHING

I **clock in** at 9am every morning.

clock in
start work



I **clock off** at 5pm every afternoon.

clock off
finish work



Despite the storm, the engineers **soldiered on** and installed the new phone line.

soldier on
continue trying to achieve
something despite difficulties



Debbie **took** the afternoon **off** so she could go to the dentist.

take off
take a break from work for
a certain amount of time



I'm not feeling very well today, so I'm going to **call in** sick.

call in
telephone your workplace



Steve **gets off** work early on Fridays so he can collect his children from school.

get off
finish work



22.2 MEETINGS

Our manager was busy, so she had to **call off** our meeting.

call off
cancel an event



Let's **talk over** all your designs and make a decision.

talk over
discuss



Angela **meets up with** her colleagues once a week to discuss all their new ideas.

meet up (with)
get together with



I might be busy tomorrow, but let's **pencil in** a meeting anyway.

pencil in
agree a time or date that
might be changed later



See also:

call in 4, 50 get off 9

take off 5, 6, 9, 55 talk over 36

22.3 WORKING

The applications for the new manager position are **piling up**. I'd better start looking through them.

pile up

increase to an unmanageable amount



Fiona was struggling to finalize the company's accounts, but she kept **plugging away** at them.

plug away (at)

work hard to achieve something difficult



Jennie's been **slogging away** trying to finish writing her presentation.

slog away (at)

work very hard for a long time



Kamal's manager **chased up** the report, which was already a week late.

chase up

ask someone for something (again)



Ted used to be very proactive, but he's been **slacking off** lately.

slack off

avoid hard work



Ola is **carrying out** a survey about worker satisfaction.

carry out

complete a task



Gio has been on vacation for two weeks, so he has a lot of work to **catch up on**.

catch up on

do work that you did not have time to do earlier



I've got lots to do! I need to **knuckle down** and get it finished.

knuckle down

start to work very hard



I've been very busy lately, but I **have next week off** work.

have off

have a break from work for a certain amount of time



22.4 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL



Steve gets off work early on Fridays so he can collect his children from school.



4 Our manager was busy, so she had to _____ our meeting.



1 Ted used to be very proactive, but he's been _____ lately.



5 Jennie's been _____ trying to finish writing her presentation.



2 I've got lots to do! I need to _____ and get it finished.



6 Kamal's manager _____ the report, which was already a week late.



3 Angela _____ her colleagues once a week to discuss all their new ideas.



7 I _____ at 9am every morning.

call off

chased up

~~gets off~~

slacking off

clock in

knuckle down

meets up with

slogging away



22.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR

- A call in ☐
- B knuckle down ☐
- C slog away at ☒
- D have off ☐
- E call off ☐
- F chase up ☐
- G meet up with ☐
- H carry out ☐
- I talk over ☐

Aa

22.6 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



I clock off at 5pm every afternoon.

1



Let's talk over all your designs and make a decision.

2



Ola is carrying out a survey about worker satisfaction.

3



I've been very busy lately, but I have next week off work.

4



I'm not feeling very well today, so I'm going to call in sick.

Aa

22.7 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Gio has been on vacation for two weeks, so he has a lot of work to **throw up on**.

Gio has been on vacation for two weeks, so he has a lot of work to catch up on.

1 The applications for the new manager position are **piling over**. I'd better start looking through them.

2 Fiona was struggling to finalize the company's accounts, but she kept **switching away** at them.

3 Debbie **took** the afternoon **down** so she could go to the dentist.

4 Despite the storm, the engineers **marched on** and installed the new phone line.

23 Careers

23.1 CAREERS

After 35 years running his own company, Robert is **standing down** and retiring.

stand down
leave an important
job or position



His daughter Jess is **taking over** the family business.

take over
take responsibility for a
company or role

Katie has been a therapist for 20 years, so she has a lot of experience to **draw on**.

draw on
make use of your experience



Olivia is trying to **get into** journalism. She's just started an internship at a radio station.

get into
become involved in something,
start a career



If I ever lose my job at the bank, I'll always have my cooking skills to **fall back on**.

fall back on
use skills that you already have
(when things go wrong)



When he left school, Paul **set out** to become a millionaire by the time he reached 30.

set out
begin doing something with
a specific aim in mind



Carolina went on a training course to help her **get ahead at work**.

get ahead (at)
improve your position at work



I **went back to** my job as a mechanic when my children started school.

go back to
return to a job after a break



Joanna is **winding down** her business to take a job managing a large hotel.

wind down
gradually bring to an end



Chad just finished his degree and is **applying for** jobs in the media.

applying for
ask to be considered for a job



See also:
 get into 31 put off 55 set out 35, 53
 wind down 31

Thanks to his impressive portfolio,
 Elliot **walked into** a job with a
 leading fashion designer.

walk into
 find a job easily



Marvin has become such a successful
 tennis player that he's **branching out**
into coaching younger players.

branch out (into)
 start doing something
 different (but related)



Ken's going to **burn himself out** if he
 keeps working 16 hours a day.

burn out
 become exhausted by working
 too much



We have chosen Diana to **head up**
 our new sales department.

head up
 lead, be in charge of a
 department or organization



I thought I wanted to be
 a lawyer, but the workload
put me off.

put off
 make someone dislike a
 person or thing



Femi has **thrown himself into**
 his new job at the hair salon.
 He loves it!

throw (oneself) into
 begin doing something with
 great enthusiasm



Naina is planning to **go into** teaching
 when she finishes university.

go into
 start a career in something



Even though he doesn't like his job, Tom is
sticking with it until he gets promoted.

stick with
 continue despite difficulties



Brian has started selling umbrellas in his store
 to **cash in on** the recent terrible weather.

cash in on
 take advantage of a situation to make money





23.2 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MATCH THE IMAGES TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS



1



2



3



4

go back to

stick with

head up

wind down

draw on

Aa

23.3 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

Femi has thrown himself into his new job.

Femi is anxious about his new job.

Femi is enthusiastic about his new job.

Femi doesn't like his new job.

☐
☒
☐

4 I went back to my job as a mechanic.

I went to meet the mechanic.

I went back to work.

I want to become a mechanic.

☐
☐
☐

1 Elliot walked into a job with a fashion designer.

Elliot walks to work.

Elliot found the job easily.

Elliot was late to work.

☐
☐
☐

2 Katie has a lot of experience to draw on.

Katie is an artist.

Katie makes use of her experience.

Katie wants to build experience.

☐
☐
☐

3 Naina is planning to go into teaching.

Naina is planning to meet her teacher.

Naina is planning to become a teacher.

Naina is planning to go to school.

☐
☐
☐

5 Diana heads up our new sales department.

Diana leads the new department.

Diana founded the new department.

Diana dislikes the new department.

☐
☐
☐

6 Chad is applying for jobs in the media.

Chad is not looking for jobs.

Chad is employed in the media.

Chad is looking for jobs in the media.

☐
☐
☐

7 Olivia is trying to get into journalism.

Olivia is trying to become a journalist.

Olivia is trying to meet a journalist.

Olivia is a journalist.

☐
☐
☐

Aa

23.4 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING THE MISSING LETTERS

leave an important job or position

= s t a n d d o w n

☐ continue despite difficulties

= s w

☐ ask to be considered for a job

= a f

☐ take responsibility for a company or role

= t o

☐ return to a job after a break

= g b t

☐ gradually bring to an end

= w d

Aa

23.5 WRITE THE PHRASAL VERBS FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

improve your position at work



get ahead (at)

☐ make someone dislike a person or thing



☐ become involved in something, start a career



☐ take advantage of a situation to make money



☐ become exhausted by working too much



☐ use skills that you already have when things go wrong



☐ start doing something different (but related)



☐ begin doing something with a specific aim in mind



cash in on

set out

branch out (into)

put off

burn out

get into

~~get ahead (at)~~

fall back on

24 Business

24.1 BUSINESS

We are proud to announce that our two banks are **entering into** a partnership.

enter into
begin a (business) relationship



Katie's trying to **drum up** interest in her café by offering free samples of her cakes.

drum up
increase support for something



Marco's garden center is doing well. It **turns over** almost \$250,000 a year.

turn over
(about a business) earn an amount of money over a certain period of time



Alan's sportswear company **profited from** the cold weather earlier this year.

profit from
gain a benefit from a situation



The board has finally **come to** a decision about the new logo for the company.

come to
arrive at, reach (a decision)



Chrissie has just **started up** her own hair salon. It opened last week.

start up
open a business



Mario's gas station has just **gone under**. It had been struggling for a long time.

go under
go bankrupt



Ellie's company **deals in** antiques. She sells pieces from all over the world.

deal in
buy and sell goods



Elsa's tired of running her own business. She's decided to **sell up**.

sell up
sell a business



The bank agreed to **write off** the debt, saving Ethan's company from bankruptcy.

write off
cancel a debt



All of the banks in our town have **closed down**. Everyone's using online banking.

close down
close permanently



My plans to expand my business **fell through** when the bank refused to lend me enough money.

fall through
fail to happen



Gemma has **bought out** all the other partners. She now owns the whole company.

buy out
buy someone's share of
a business



Rita's company sells furniture, but **farms out** all of its manufacturing to other people.

farm out (to)
give some of your work to people
who do not work for your company



Our business is growing, so we are **taking on** more staff.

take on
employ



We need the CEO to **sign off on** this important decision.

sign off on
give official approval to something



A new bookstore is **opening up** in our neighborhood.

open up
open for the first time



Al's store is **selling off** a lot of its stock. There are some great bargains there.

sell off
sell something quickly at a reduced price



The company is facing difficulties. We may need to **lay off** some staff.

lay off
stop employing someone



Could you **draw up** a contract for our new clients?

draw up
write a contract



Aa

24.2 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



We are proud to announce that our two banks are entering into a partnership.

1



All of the banks in our town have closed down. Everyone's using online banking.

2



Mario's gas station has just gone under. It had been struggling for a long time.

3



Katie's trying to drum up interest in her café by offering free samples of her cakes.

4



The bank agreed to write off the debt, saving Ethan's company from bankruptcy.

Aa

24.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Elsa's tired of running her own business. She's decided to ~~trade~~ / ~~sell~~ / ~~walk~~ up.

- 1 Marco's garden center is doing well. It turns ~~down~~ / ~~over~~ / ~~forward~~ almost \$250,000 a year.
- 2 We need the CEO to ~~sign~~ / ~~mark~~ / ~~stamp~~ off on this important decision.
- 3 The board has finally ~~arrived~~ / ~~reached~~ / ~~come~~ to a decision about the new logo for the company.
- 4 Ellie's company deals ~~on~~ / ~~in~~ / ~~for~~ antiques. She sells pieces from all over the world.
- 5 Could you ~~sketch~~ / ~~draw~~ / ~~paint~~ up a contract for our new clients?
- 6 The company is facing difficulties. We may need to lay ~~off~~ / ~~out~~ / ~~down~~ some staff.



24.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR

write off	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	sell off	<input type="checkbox"/>	take on	<input type="checkbox"/>
1 close down	<input type="checkbox"/>	fall through	<input type="checkbox"/>	start up	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 gone under	<input type="checkbox"/>	buy out	<input type="checkbox"/>	come to	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 sign off	<input type="checkbox"/>	draw up	<input type="checkbox"/>	lay off	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 take on	<input type="checkbox"/>	open up	<input type="checkbox"/>	drum up	<input type="checkbox"/>
5 enter into	<input type="checkbox"/>	fall through	<input type="checkbox"/>	fall from	<input type="checkbox"/>
6 walk up	<input type="checkbox"/>	farm out to	<input type="checkbox"/>	profit from	<input type="checkbox"/>

Aa

24.5 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL

Could you draw up a contract for our new clients?



1 Our business is growing, so we are _____ more staff.



2 A new bookstore is _____ in our neighborhood.



3 Chrissie has just _____ her own hair salon. It opened last week.



4 Gemma has _____ all the other partners.



5 Al's store is _____ a lot of its stock.



6 Alan's sportswear company _____ the cold weather.



opening up

bought out

selling off

taking on

~~draw up~~

profited from

started up

25 Numbers and amounts

25.1 NUMBERS AND AMOUNTS

Katie's bills have been **stacking up**.
She's in a lot of debt now.

stack up
increase in number or amount



The price for our cruise was going to be \$1,207, but the travel agent agreed to **round it down to** \$1,200.

round down (to)
reduce a number to a nearby number (usually ending in zero)



The kids are **counting down** the days before we go camping.

count down
count the amount of time before something happens



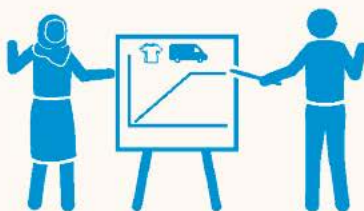
The company's share price has been falling, but it's finally starting to **bottom out**.

bottom out
stop getting worse, reach its lowest point



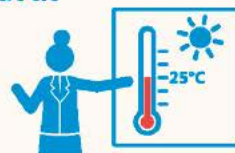
The number of people buying clothes online **shot up** last year.

shoot up
increase dramatically



The temperature varies a bit in the summer, but it **averages out at** about 25°C.

average out (at)
result in an average of



We estimated the cost of the project to be £14,900, but **rounded it up to** the nearest thousand.

round up (to)
increase a number to a nearby number (usually ending in zero)



Alfie **counted out** the money he owed me and placed it on the table.

count out
count things one by one and place them somewhere



After falling dramatically in May, the price of gold has **evened out** over the past two months.

even out
become level, contain fewer differences or irregularities



Over the last six months, it has started to **level out**.

level out
become level, stop increasing or decreasing

See also:
add up 14, 41 take away 30, 55

The coach **divided** the children
up into two equal teams.

divide up (into)
separate into groups,
pieces, or sections



If you want to set yourself a budget,
start by **adding up** all your
monthly expenses.

add up
calculate the total



Renovating a house is very expensive.
The cost soon **mounts up**.

mount up
gradually increase in
number or amount



Shreya **counted up** the number of
people wanting coffee and went
to make some.

count up
add together things or people
belonging to a group



When Georgia was paying her check,
she **added on** a 20% tip.

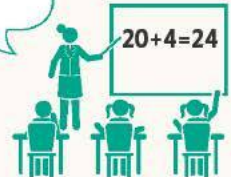
add on
attach an extra thing or
amount to something



25.2 CALCULATIONS

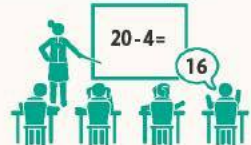
If you **add 20 and 4 together**,
you get 24.

add together
calculate the total of two
or more numbers



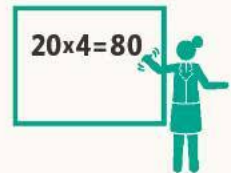
The teacher asked what's left when you
take 4 away from 20.

take away (from)
subtract

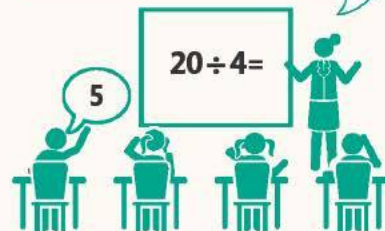


For the next question, the class
had to **multiply 20 by 4**.

multiply by
add a number to itself a
certain number of times



Does anyone know what
20 divided by 4 equals?



divide by
find how many times a larger
number contains a smaller number

25.3 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

The kids are counting down the days before we go camping.



The kids are counting below the days before we go camping.



1 The number of people buying clothes online shot up last year.



The number of people buying clothes online bought up last year.



2 The coach divided the children above into two equal teams.



The coach divided the children up into two equal teams.



3 Shreya counted up the number of people wanting coffee and went to make some.



Shreya counted on the number of people wanting coffee and went to make some.



4 When Georgia was paying her check, she added on a 20% tip.



When Georgia was paying her check, she divided on a 20% tip.



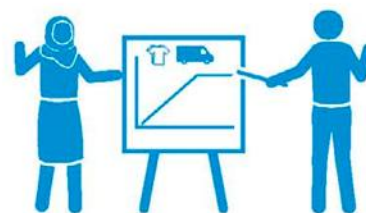
25.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



A ☐



B ☐ 1



C ☐



D ☐



E ☐



F ☐

Aa

25.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Alfie **counted of** the money he owed me and placed it on the table.

Alfie counted out the money he owed me and placed it on the table.



- 1 Katie's bills have been **stacking over**. She's in a lot of debt now.



- 2 The company's share price has been falling, but it's finally starting to **ground out**.



- 3 The temperature varies a bit in the summer, but it **averages in at** about 25°C.



- 4 We estimated the cost of the project to be £14,900, but **mounted it up to** the nearest thousand.



- 5 If you want to set yourself a budget, start by **scoring up** all your monthly expenses.



Aa

25.6 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

gradually increase in number or amount

=

mount up

☐ count the amount of time before something happens

=

☐ calculate the total

=

☐ result in an average of

=

☐ become level, stop increasing or decreasing

=

☐ count things one by one and place them somewhere

=

☐ stop getting worse, reach its lowest point

=

level out

count out

count down

add up

~~mount up~~

average out (at)

bottom out

26 Success and failure

26.1 SUCCESS

Nia **built on** her experience working at a hotel to set up her own guesthouse.

build on
use your knowledge, experience, or success
as a way to become more successful



When I didn't get into college, I started my own successful business. Everything **worked out** in the end!

work out
have a positive outcome



Anita's hard work has **paid off**. The dress looks beautiful.

pay off
benefit after investing time or money



The Scottish team **pulled off** an amazing victory, scoring two goals in the last four minutes.

pull off
be successful (despite difficulties)



Marco did not study at all for the English exam but somehow **scraped by**.

scrape by
only just succeed in doing something



Clive **muddled through** the interview without any preparation. He was shocked when he got the job.

muddle through
manage to do something despite
having no plan or understanding of it



I know these results are disappointing, but keep working and you will **win out** eventually.

win out
be successful after difficulty



I never imagined James would be so great playing Hamlet, but he really **carried it off**.

carry off
unexpectedly succeed at something



Maria's dream of becoming famous finally **came off** when her song became a huge summer hit.

come off
be successful (about a plan)



Kwase **sailed through** his driving test. He didn't make any mistakes.

sail through
deal with something very easily



See also:

come off 6, 52 give up 55 pay off 14
run into 14 work out 20, 33

26.2 FAILURE

Marcello tried to fix the washing machine, but he has **given up**.

give up
stop trying to achieve something



Simon's campaign **ran into** difficulties when he was accused of lying.

run into
begin to experience something negative



Many smaller stores have **lost out** since the supermarket opened in town.

lose out (to)
be beaten by something else



The decorators have **screwed up** this job! We won't use them again.

screw up
make a mess of something (informal)



26.3 CAUSES OF SUCCESS AND FAILURE

The future success of our company **rides on** us winning this contract.

ride on
depend on



Having supportive parents really **contributed to** my success.

contribute to
help to cause something



When accepting the award, Carla **put** her success **down to** hard work.

put down to
attribute events to a particular reason



My teachers told me I'd never **amount to** anything, but now I'm a lawyer.

amount to
develop into (often used in the negative)



When Al saw how many people were making money by selling things online, he decided to **get in on** it.

get in on
become involved in a successful activity



26.4 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS

be successful (about a plan)

win out

① only just succeed in doing something

sail through

② unexpectedly succeed at something

come off

③ be successful after difficulty

carry off

④ deal with something very easily

run into

⑤ begin to experience something negative

screw up

⑥ stop trying to achieve something

scrape by

⑦ make a mess of something

give up



26.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR

scrape by ☒ give up ☐① screw up ☐ put down to ☐② carry off ☐ ride on ☐③ win out ☐ win over ☐④ come off ☐ come up ☐⑤ run into ☐ run off ☐

26.6 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



When accepting the award, Carla put her success down to hard work.



When accepting the award, Carla put her success up to hard work.



1



My teachers told me I'd never add up to anything, but now I'm a lawyer.



My teachers told me I'd never amount to anything, but now I'm a lawyer.



2



Anita's hard work has paid up. The dress looks beautiful.



Anita's hard work has paid off. The dress looks beautiful.



3



Many smaller stores have lost out since the supermarket opened in town.



Many smaller stores have closed out since the supermarket opened in town.



4



Nia looked on her experience working at a hotel to set up her own guesthouse.



Nia built on her experience working at a hotel to set up her own guesthouse.



5



Having supportive parents really attributed to my success.



Having supportive parents really contributed to my success.



26.7 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

The future success of our company **drives on** us winning this contract.

The future success of our company rides on us winning this contract.

1 Clive **muddled on** the interview without any preparation. He was shocked when he got the job.

2 When I didn't get into college, I started my own successful business. Everything **worked up** in the end!

3 The Scottish team **pushed off** an amazing victory, scoring two goals in the last four minutes.

4 When Al saw how many people were making money by selling things online, he decided to **get out on** it.

5 Kwase **sailed into** his driving test. He didn't make any mistakes.

27 At home

27.1 PHRASAL VERBS WITH "LOCK"

Clive makes sure that he **locks** his tools **away** in his shed.

lock away
put something away and lock the door



When Ben got home, he realized that he'd forgotten his keys and was **locked out**.

lock out
stop someone from entering by locking the door



The janitor didn't notice Alex when he locked the doors. He accidentally **locked** him **in**.

lock in
stop someone from leaving by locking the door



27.3 APPLIANCES AND HOUSEHOLD ITEMS

Did you **leave** the lights **on** when you left the house?

leave on
leave turned on



The lights in the house **went out**, so Clara lit some candles.

go out
(lights) stop shining



It was a very hot day, so Les **put** the fan **on**.

put on (UK)
make a piece of equipment start working



Andy **blew** the candles **out** before going to bed.

blow out
make a candle stop burning by blowing air at it



If you're bored, **turn on** the television. There's a good movie on tonight.

turn on
make something start working



Make sure you **turn** the television **off** before going to bed.

turn off
make something stop working



See also:

come on 52, 56 go off 3, 8, 30, 35 go out 3, 5, 54
put on 6, 41, 55 turn off 9 turn on 1 turn up 1, 4

27.2 MOVING

Pete's new neighbors **moved in** last weekend.

move in(to)
start living in new home



My parents have decided to **move away** and live in the country.

move away
go and live in a different area



We finally sold our house. We're **moving out** today.

move out (of)
stop living in your old home
and move somewhere else



Jools has **settled into** his new apartment very quickly.

settle in(to)
get used to living in a new place



When Elsa heard her favorite song on the radio, she **turned up** the volume and began dancing.

turn up
increase the volume (or power) of a piece of equipment



Paula's neighbor asked her to **turn down** her stereo because it was too loud.

turn down
decrease the volume (or power) of a piece of equipment



Cassie thought her computer was broken until she realized that she hadn't **plugged it in**.

plug in(to)
connect an electrical appliance to the electricity supply



The street lights **come on** at dusk, when the sun sets.

come on
start working (automatically)



The street lights **go off** at dawn, when the sun rises.

go off
stop working (automatically)



27.4 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL



Pete's new neighbors moved in last weekend.



4 When Elsa heard her favorite song on the radio, she _____ the volume.



1 If you're bored, _____ the television. There's a good movie on tonight.



5 The street lights _____ at dusk, when the sun sets.



2 When Ben got home, he realized that he'd forgotten his keys and was _____.



6 The lights in the house _____, so Clara lit some candles.



3 My parents have decided to _____ and live in the country.



7 We finally sold our house. We're _____ today.

moving out

come on

turn on

move away

locked out

~~moved in~~

turned up

went out

Aa

27.5 MATCH THE PHRASAL VERBS TO THEIR OPPOSITES

	put on	go off
1	come on	turn on
2	move out	turn off
3	lock in	move in
4	turn off	turn down
5	turn up	lock out



27.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A ☐B ☒C ☐D ☐E ☐F ☐

Aa

27.7 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

(lights) stop shining	=	<u>go out</u>
<input type="checkbox"/> make something stop working	=	_____
<input type="checkbox"/> stop someone from leaving by locking the door	=	_____
<input type="checkbox"/> leave turned on	=	_____
<input type="checkbox"/> decrease the volume of a piece of equipment	=	_____
<input type="checkbox"/> start working (automatically)	=	_____

lock in

turn down

come on

~~go out~~

leave on

turn off

28 Chores

28.1 CLEANING

We need to **tidy up** before the guests arrive.

tidy up
make tidy again



Elliot's dad told him to **clear away** all his toys.

clear away
put things back in their proper places



Jason told me to **mop up** the water that I'd spilled on the floor.

mop up
clean liquid off a surface with a mop



This room is a mess! **Pick up** all these clothes!

pick up
take something off the floor



If the chicken smells bad, you should **throw it away**.

throw away
discard, put in the trash



When Ella cooks dinner, her boyfriend **washes up** the dishes.

wash up (UK)
clean the dishes



After painting the living room, Paul and Sally **put** all the furniture **back**.

put back
return an object to its original place



It was a sunny morning, so Ian **hung** his washing **out** to dry.

hang out
hang washing on a clothesline to dry



There was a lot of mess to **clean up** after the party.

clean up
make tidy again



We all **pitched in** to get it finished more quickly.

pitch in
join in, help others to do something

See also:

cut back 14 hang out 5 pick up 9, 10, 11, 31, 38 pull up 9
put up 35 take out 3, 14, 21 throw away 31

We **cleared out** the garage this weekend.
There was so much junk in there!

clear out
remove all the unnecessary things
from a room or building



I **wipe down** the table each evening
after we've eaten.

wipe down
clean a surface with a cloth



On Tuesday mornings, I **take**
the trash **out**.

take out
move something outside



Nousha's room looked much
nicer after she'd **put up**
some pictures.

put up
hang something on a wall



Karl **swept up** the trash from the
party and put it into bags.

sweep up
clean the ground with a broom



28.2 GARDENING

The tree in our backyard died,
so we had to **chop it down**.

chop down
make a tree fall to the ground



The hedge in Doug's yard was getting
too big, so he **cut it back**.

cut back
remove some branches from
a tree, bush, or hedge



I'm **digging up** the lavender bushes
so I can move them to a different
part of the garden.

dig up
remove a plant from the ground
by digging around and under it



Paul spent the whole afternoon **pulling**
up weeds. His yard was full of them.

pull up
remove a plant from
ground by pulling



After finishing the gardening,
Scott **put** his tools **away**.

put away
return an object to its
proper place



Aa

28.3 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS

take something off the floor

pull up

1 return an object to its original place

chop down

2 make a tree fall to the ground

pick up

3 join in, help others to do something

take out

4 remove a plant from the ground by pulling

wash up

5 move something outside

put back

6 remove all the unnecessary things from a room

pitch in

7 clean the dishes

clear out

Aa

28.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Elliot's dad told him to clear ~~up~~ / ~~away~~ / ~~out~~ all his toys.1 Nousha's room looked much nicer after she'd put ~~up~~ / ~~in~~ / ~~on~~ some pictures.2 Paul spent the whole afternoon pulling ~~on~~ / ~~in~~ / ~~up~~ weeds.3 Karl swept ~~down~~ / ~~over~~ / ~~up~~ the trash from the party and put it into bags.4 After finishing the gardening, Scott put his tools ~~up~~ / ~~away~~ / ~~out~~.5 Jason told me to mop ~~up~~ / ~~around~~ / ~~over~~ the water that I'd spilled on the floor.



28.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



This room is a mess! Pick up
all these clothes!



3 I _____ the table each evening after we've eaten.



1 The tree in our backyard died, so we had to _____.



4 We need to _____ before the guests arrive.



2 I'm _____ the lavender bushes so I can move them to a different part of the garden.



5 The hedge in Doug's yard was getting too big, so he _____.

Aa

28.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

We all **pitched out** to get it finished quickly.
We all pitched in to get it finished quickly.

1 On Tuesday mornings, I **take** the trash **off**.

2 If the chicken smells bad, **throw** it **over**.

3 Ian **hung** his washing **in** to dry.

4 We **cleared over** the garage this weekend.

5 There was a mess to **clean on** after the party.

29 Cooking

29.1 COOKING

Patrick **broke up** the chocolate before adding it to the cake mixture.

break up

separate something into smaller pieces



Nadiya left the cherry pie on the windowsill to **cool down**.

cool down

become cooler



I always **measure out** all of my ingredients before trying a new recipe.

measure out

weigh or take a certain amount



You should **mix in** the eggs and milk with the other ingredients.

mix in

combine (with other ingredients)



My sister can **whip up** a tasty meal in minutes from just a few ingredients.

whip up

prepare (a meal) quickly



Before serving the curry I made sure to **fish out** any bones.

fish out

remove from a liquid



The sauce **boiled over**, leaving a mess on the stove top.

boil over

flow over the edge of a container (during cooking)



Dev took the leftovers from the fridge and **heated** them up in the microwave.

heat up

make hotter



My breakfast typically **consists of** bread and cheese, served with coffee.

consist of

be formed of



We managed to **fill up** three jars with the cookies we'd baked.

fill up

fill a container to the top



See also:
break up 3, 15, 21, 38
cool down 11.1

29.2 PREPARING A RECIPE

RECIPE

CHICKEN CASSEROLE



INGREDIENTS

2 onions
3 carrots
5 potatoes
2 chicken thighs
1 pint vegetable stock
Chopped parsley (to garnish)

SERVES: 4

PREP TIME: 15 minutes

COOK TIME: 30 minutes

METHOD

1. Start by **chopping up** some onions, carrots, and potatoes, then **set** them **aside** for later.
2. Fry the meat on a medium heat for 10 minutes (you may want to **cut off** any extra fat from the meat).
3. **Pour in** the stock, add the vegetables, and boil for 20 minutes.
4. **Finish off** the stew by adding chopped parsley.

Note: To make a vegetarian version, **leave out** the meat and use mushrooms instead.

Start by **chopping up** some onions, carrots, and potatoes.

chop up
cut into small pieces



After you've chopped the vegetables, **set** them **aside** for later.

set aside
keep something for later



I always **cut off** the fat from the meat before cooking it.

cut off
remove something from a larger piece



When the meat is cooked, **pour in** the stock.

pour in
add a liquid



Finish off the stew by adding chopped parsley.

finish off
complete



To make a vegetarian version, **leave out** the meat and use mushrooms instead.

leave out
exclude, not include



29.3 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL

You should mix in the eggs and milk with the other ingredients.

- ① I always _____ the fat from the meat before cooking it.
- ② My breakfast typically _____ bread and cheese, served with coffee.
- ③ Nadiya left the cherry pie on the windowsill to _____.
- ④ Before serving the curry I made sure to _____ any bones.
- ⑤ My sister can _____ a tasty meal in minutes from just a few ingredients.

cool down

~~mix in~~

cut off

whip up

fish out

consists of



29.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR



measure out ☒
measure over ☐



① chop off ☐
chop up ☐



② set apart ☐
set aside ☐



③ cut off ☐
cut away ☐



④ mix up ☐
mix in ☐



⑤ pour in ☐
pour over ☐



⑥ finish off ☐
finish up ☐



⑦ fish out ☐
fish for ☐



⑧ cool off ☐
cool down ☐



⑨ leave out ☐
leave in ☐

29.5 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



The sauce boiled over, leaving a mess on the stove top.



Dev took the leftovers from the fridge and heated them up in the microwave.



I always measure out all of my ingredients before trying a new recipe.



Patrick broke up the chocolate before adding it to the cake mixture.



We managed to fill up three jars with the cookies we'd baked.



My sister can whip up a tasty meal in minutes from just a few ingredients.



29.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Start by **chopping ups** onions and carrots.

Start by chopping up onions and carrots.

1 After chopping the vegetables, **set** them **beside**.

4 **Mix over** the eggs with the other ingredients.

5 **Finish in** the stew by adding chopped parsley.

2 **Cut on** the fat from the meat before cooking it.

6 Before serving, make sure to **fish on** any bones.

3 When the meat is cooked, **pour up** the stock.

7 For a vegetarian version, **leave down** the meat.

30 Food and drink

30.1 FOOD

Rosa **served up** a wonderful seafood dish.

serve up
present food to other people



Martin's grandmother told him he could only have dessert if he **ate up** all his vegetables.

eat up
eat all of something



Selma and Roy prefer to **eat in**. It's much cheaper than going to a restaurant.

eat in
eat a meal at home



That fish really **didn't agree with** me. I have a terrible stomachache.

not agree with
make someone feel ill



I think this milk has **gone off**. It smells terrible.

go off (UK)
become bad to eat or drink



Apple pie and ice cream **go together** perfectly.

go together
taste or look good together



Our restaurant can **cater for** about 100 customers at a time.

cater for
provide for



30.2 DRINK

After the wedding, we all **drank to** the bride and groom.

drink to
toast someone or something



The café was about to close, so we **drank up** and got ready to leave.

drink up
drink all of something



See also:

break off 49 go off 8, 27, 35

run out (of) 15 take away 25, 55

I was going to make a lasagna, but we've **run out of** pasta.

run out (of)
use all of something, not have any more of something



Why don't we **eat out** for a change? We could go to that new Italian restaurant instead.

eat out
eat in a café or restaurant, eat away from home

Daniel **broke off** a piece of bread and dipped it in the olive oil.

break off
separate a smaller piece of something from a larger piece



Lisa **shared out** the chocolates, giving the children two each.

share out
give each person the same amount of something



Greg was so hungry that he **polished off** the entire cake.

polish off
eat or drink all of something



After a long day at the beach, my kids **wolfed down** their dinner.

wolf down
eat all of something very quickly



Paul and Sarah ordered two hamburgers and sodas to **take away**.

take away (UK)
take food out of a restaurant to eat



This cake is delicious, but it could **do without** all the cream on top.

do without
be better without



I **washed down** my pizza with a cold drink.

wash down
drink something after eating (informal)



Your mug's almost empty, Peter. Would you like me to **top it up**?

top up
fill a cup or glass that is partly empty



Aa

30.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDING

Greg was so hungry that

we all drank to the bride and groom.

1 I washed down my pizza

giving the children two each.

2 Our restaurant can cater for

he polished off the entire cake.

3 After the wedding,

but we've run out of pasta.

4 Lisa shared out the chocolates,

about 100 customers at a time.

5 I was going to make a lasagna,

with a cold drink.

Aa

30.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

After the wedding, we all drank ~~on~~ / ~~to~~ / ~~over~~ the bride and groom.1 Paul and Sarah ordered two hamburgers and sodas to take **away** / off / with.2 The café was about to close, so we drank **down** / in / **up** and got ready to leave.3 I washed **up** / down / in my pizza with a cold drink.4 After a long day at the beach, my kids wolfed **out** / down / on their dinner.5 Daniel broke **over** / off / **down** a piece of bread and dipped it in the olive oil.



30.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR



serve up ☒

serve over ☐



1 run out of ☐

run down ☐



2 go on ☐

go off ☐



3 eat up ☐

eat down ☐



4 wash down ☐

wash up ☐



5 go together ☐

go with ☐

Aa

30.6 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

eat or drink all of something

=

p o l i s h o f f

☐ eat away from home

=

e o

☐ fill a cup or glass that is partly empty

=

t u

☐ toast someone or something

=

d t

☐ eat a meal at home

=

e i

☐ taste or look good together

=

g t

31 Free time

31.1 HOBBIES

Anastasia absolutely **lives for** skiing. She goes to the mountains whenever she can.

live for
have a passion for, consider something
the most important thing in your life



It takes a while to **get into** horseback riding.

get into
become interested in, begin
to enjoy an activity



Adi's painting skills are really **coming along**. He might become an artist one day.

come along
improve at a skill or activity



I recently **got back into** cycling. I hadn't done it since I was a teenager.

get back into
start doing something again
after not doing it for some time



It's hard at first, but if you **keep at it** you'll start to love it.

keep at
keep practicing a skill or activity



After she retired, Kim **took up** yoga. She does it for half an hour each morning.

take up
start learning a new skill or activity



31.2 RELAXING

Nathan told his daughters to stop **lazing about**, and help to tidy the house.

laze about
relax, do no work



On my days off work, I like to **sit around** the garden doing nothing.

sit around
spend time sitting, doing little



After the exam, the students went to the local park to **wind down**.

wind down
become calm (after a period
of work or excitement)



I spend most Sundays **lying around** the house.

lie around
relax on the couch or in bed



Learning the piano isn't easy, but if you **stick at** it, you could become a great pianist.

stick at (UK)

keep practicing a skill or activity
despite difficulties



While working in Seoul I tried to **pick up** some Korean by talking to local people.

pick up

learn a new skill informally



If you want to be a great tennis player, it helps if you **start out** at a young age.

start out

begin doing a hobby or career



Ken's currently **working toward** getting a black belt in judo.

work toward

invest time in something with the
aim of achieving something



Fabio could have been a great guitarist, but he **threw** it all **away** by never practicing.

throw away

waste a talent or opportunity



I found running very hard when I started, but I **get** a lot of satisfaction **out of** it now.

get out of
enjoy



Luiza spent the evening **curled up** on the couch reading a book.

curl up

lie or sit with your arms and legs
pulled up towards you



After a stressful day, I take a bath to help me **chill out**.

chill out

relax, stop feeling angry or stressed



Aden needs to **loosen up**. Tell him to come and dance with us!

loosen up

relax, stop being so formal



On Friday evenings, Josh likes to **kick back** and watch some television.

kick back

stop work and relax (informal)



31.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

It takes a while to get **into** / ~~behind~~ / ~~above~~ horseback riding.

- 1 Ken's currently working **around** / **toward** / **for** getting a black belt in judo.
- 2 Nathan told his daughters to stop lazing **beside** / **about** / **along**, and help to tidy the house.
- 3 After the exam, the students went to the local park to wind **low** / **below** / **down**.
- 4 I recently got back **into** / **onto** / **for** cycling. I hadn't done it since I was a teenager.
- 5 On Friday evenings, Josh likes to kick **ahead** / **back** / **around** and watch some television.
- 6 Anastasia absolutely lives **by** / **on** / **for** skiing. She goes to the mountains whenever she can.

31.4 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



I found running very hard when I started, but I get a lot of satisfaction out of it now.



While working in Seoul I tried to pick up some Korean by talking to local people.



Fabio could have been a great guitarist, but he threw it all away by never practicing.



Learning the piano isn't easy, but if you stick at it, you could become a great pianist.



Adi's painting skills are really coming along. He might become an artist one day.



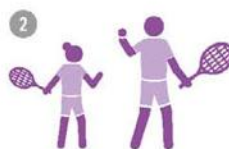
31.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MATCH THE IMAGES TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS



sit around



take up



live for



start out



curl up

Aa

31.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

keep you it. at love you'll If to start it,

If you keep at it, you'll start to love it.

the around I most spend Sundays lying house.

1 _____

loosen us. to and Aden dance with needs up

2 _____

On off, I around to sit the my days like garden.

3 _____

curled Louiza evening up the spent couch. on the

4 _____

I chill After stressful take bath a to a out. day,

5 _____

32 Health

32.1 HEALTH

My son always **bounces back** quickly whenever he gets ill.

bounce back
to recover quickly or without difficulty



The wound seems to be **healing up** well. It will be better soon.

heal up (UK)
(about a wound) become completely healthy



Elaine's rash began to **clear up** after she started using the cream.

clear up
go away or get better



My brother's a nurse. He **cares for** sick people at the local hospital.

care for
take care of



There's a bad cold **going around** my office at the moment. Everyone is ill.

go around
spread from person to person



Mona has an awful headache. She doesn't **feel up to** working today.

feel up to
feel in a good enough condition



Paola's hay fever usually **flares up** in the spring.

flare up
suddenly appear or reappear



It's taken me weeks to **get over** this cold, but I finally feel better.

get over
recover, feel well again



Danny's thumb **swelled up** after he was stung by a wasp.

swell up
(about a swelling) become bigger



After a few hours, the swelling had started to **go down**.

go down
(about a swelling) become smaller



See also:

care for 3 clear up 11, 50 get over 45, 53
go around 54 go down 12, 54 pass on 38

I think I'm **coming down with** the flu.
I have a headache and my nose
is running.

come down with
become ill with



When Rachel **came around** after the
operation, her husband was
sitting at her bedside.

come around
become conscious again



I was very sad to hear that your
grandmother has **passed away**.

pass away
die



My son **passed on** the virus
to his sisters.

pass on
give (an illness) to someone else



One of the musicians **passed out** during
the performance this evening.

pass out
faint, become unconscious



It was a very risky operation,
but Josh **pulled through**.

pull through
survive a serious illness or operation



Tina's leg muscles **seized up** after she
had completed the marathon.

seize up
become stiff, difficult to move



I've been ill for weeks, but I've finally
managed to **shake it off**.

shake off
fully recover from



Ella's been **throwing up** all day. She must
be suffering from food poisoning.

throw up
vomit



As the painkiller **wore off**, Shahid's
tooth began to ache again.

wear off
gradually lose its effectiveness



Aa

32.2 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS

to recover quickly or without difficulty

heal up

1 become completely healthy

throw up

2 vomit

bounce back

3 suddenly appear or reappear

go around

4 become conscious again

seize up

5 become stiff, difficult to move

come around

6 spread from person to person

flare up

Aa

32.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

It was a very risky operation, but Josh pulled ~~under~~ / ~~over~~ / through.1 Elaine's rash began to clear ~~out~~ / ~~in~~ / up after she started using the cream.2 I think I'm coming down ~~with~~ / ~~for~~ / to the flu.3 Ella's been throwing ~~over~~ / up / ~~down~~ all day.4 My son passed ~~over~~ / through / ~~on~~ the virus to his sisters.5 It's taken me weeks to get ~~over~~ / around / through this cold, but I finally feel better.



32.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



One of the musicians passed out during the performance this evening.



3 Danny's thumb _____ after he was stung by a wasp.



1 Paola's hay fever usually _____ in the spring.



4 My brother's a nurse. He _____ sick people at the local hospital.



2 After a few hours, the swelling had started to _____.



5 I was very sad to hear that your grandmother has _____.

Aa

32.5 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

become stiff, difficult to move

=

seize up

- ☐ take care of
- ☐ feel in a good enough condition
- ☐ spread from person to person
- ☐ gradually lose its effectiveness
- ☐ survive a serious illness or operation

=

=

=

=

=

33 Sports and exercise

33.1 SPORTS

Clara was **sent off** the pitch after pushing over another player.

send off
tell someone to leave a game because they have broken the rules



The crowd **cheered** Tony **on** as he approached the finish line.

cheer on
encourage someone by cheering



My sister is a judo champion. She **ranks among** the best in the country.

rank among
be included among



Angela **knocked** Kirsten **out** in the first round of the competition.

knock out (of)
defeat a team or player, removing them from a competition



Pete wanted to start playing baseball, so he **signed up for** his school team.

sign up (for)
join a team or activity



Five runners have **gotten through to** the final. Whoever wins this race gets the trophy.

get through (to)
reach (a stage in a competition)



33.2 EXERCISE

After a big meal, Chris goes for a brisk walk to **burn off** the extra calories.

burn off
use up energy (by doing exercise)



Playing tennis all afternoon with Gus has **worn** Charlie **out**.

wear out
make very tired



For this yoga position, you have to **stretch** your arms **out** as far as you can.

stretch out
extend



Jamal was completely **wiped out** after cycling up the mountain.

wipe out
make extremely tired



See also:

aim at 34 get through (to) 38 keep from 51 keep up (with) 20 send off 38
turn around 19 warm up 11 wear out 49 work out 20, 26

Frank watched Phillip play tennis. He was **sizing up** his opponent before the next day's match.

size up

look (at a person or situation)
and decide how to act



It looked like the Eagles were going to lose the match, but they **turned it around** at the last minute.

turn around

make a bad situation better



I picked up my bow and **aimed** another arrow **at** the target.

aim at

direct something at something else



Sami invited me to **join in** a game of cricket.

join in

get involved in something that
others are already doing



My knee injury **kept me from** completing the marathon this year.

keep from

prevent someone from doing something



I struggle to **keep up with** my brother. He's much fitter than I am.

keep up (with)

move at the same speed



After a long day in the office, playing squash helps me to **work off** all my stress.

work off

get rid of (energy or an emotion)



After finishing the race, Sandra **warmed down** by stretching her legs.

warm down

stretch and relax your body
after exercise



Before playing a game of soccer, I always **warm up** by jogging slowly.

warm up

prepare your body for exercise



Leo **works out** at his local gym every morning.

work out

exercise



Aa

33.3 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL TO CREATE PHRASAL VERBS

After a big meal, Chris goes for a brisk walk to **burn off** the extra calories.

- 1 After finishing the race, Sandra **warmed** by stretching her legs.
- 2 Jamal was completely **wiped** after cycling up the mountain.
- 3 Clara was **sent** the pitch after pushing over another player.
- 4 Five runners have **gotten** to the final. Whoever wins this race will win the trophy.
- 5 My sister is a judo champion. She **ranks** the best in the country.
- 6 I struggle to **keep** with my brother. He's much fitter than I am.

out

among

~~off~~

through

up

down

off

Aa

33.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



Playing tennis all afternoon with Gus has worn Charlie out.



Playing tennis all afternoon with Gus has worn Charlie off.



1 Before playing a game of soccer, I always warm down by jogging slowly.



Before playing a game of soccer, I always warm up by jogging slowly.



2 For this yoga position, you have to stretch your arms out as far as you can.



For this yoga position, you have to stretch your arms in as far as you can.



3 Pete wanted to start playing baseball, so he signed on for his school team.



Pete wanted to start playing baseball, so he signed up for his school team.



4 Angela knocked Kirsten out in the first round of the competition.



Angela knocked Kirsten down in the first round of the competition.



5 My knee injury kept me through completing the marathon this year.



My knee injury kept me from completing the marathon this year.





33.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND WRITE THE SENTENCES BELOW THE IMAGES



*Sami invited me to join
in a game of cricket.*



1 _____



2 _____



3 _____



4 _____



5 _____

Aa

33.6 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

direct something at something else

=

aim at

☐ move at the same speed

=

☐ prepare your body for exercise

=

☐ look (at a person or situation) and decide how to act

=

☐ make a bad situation better

=

☐ use up energy (by doing exercise)

=

☐ encourage someone by cheering

=

☐ get rid of (energy or an emotion)

=

34 The arts

See also:
aim at 33

34.1 CREATIVITY

Sami and Shahid **made** the cardboard box **into** a robot.

make into

change something into something else



The architects have **mocked up** a model of the new museum.

mock up

make a model of something



Greg and Chloe **colored in** pictures of dinosaurs after their trip to the museum.

color in

use colored pencils or pens to add colors to a drawing



34.2 MEDIA

The new music channel is **aimed at** people who like jazz.

aim at

be intended for or targeted at



This new TV show **feeds on** people's curiosity about aliens.

feed on

take advantage of



I **tune into** my favorite radio show every Sunday morning.

tune into

watch or listen to a program or station on the television or radio



34.3 MUSIC

At the start of the horror movie, scary music started to **fade in**.

fade in

gradually become louder



As the music **died away**, the presenter stepped onto the stage.

die away

become quieter before ending



The noise from the parade **faded away** as it moved away from us.

fade away

gradually become quieter



My new headphones help me concentrate by **filtering out** background noise.

filter out

remove or block something



34.4 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL

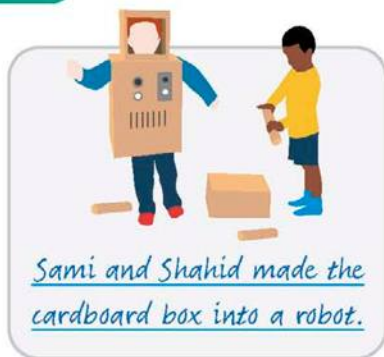
As the music died away, the presenter stepped onto the stage.

- 1 The new music channel is _____ people who like jazz.
- 2 At the start of the horror movie, scary music started to _____.
- 3 My new headphones help me concentrate by _____ background noise.
- 4 This new TV show _____ people's curiosity about aliens.
- 5 The noise from the parade _____ as it moved away from us.
- 6 I _____ my favorite radio show every Sunday morning.

feeds on fade in ~~died away~~ tune into filtering out aimed at faded away



34.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND WRITE THE SENTENCES BELOW THE IMAGES



1 _____



2 _____



3 _____



4 _____



5 _____

See also: arrive at 47 bring back 16 check out 10, 50 end up 17
get around 50, 53 get away 13 get back (from) 1 go back 16, 54
go off 3, 8, 27, 30 put up 28 set off 46, 53 set out 23, 53

35.1 TRAVEL

When Krishna **arrived at** the villa, the party had already begun.

arrive at
reach a destination



During his vacation in Rome, Anton hired a moped to **get around** the city.

get around
travel from place to place



When they arrived at the hotel, Julia and John went to reception to **check in**.

check in(to)
register your arrival at a hotel or airport



Julia and John **checked out of** the hotel and went to the airport.

check out (of)
leave a hotel after paying the bill



On your way to London you'll **pass by** Cambridge, a beautiful university city.

pass by
pass another place (while on the way somewhere else)



Dan and I went to Paris for our honeymoon. We **went back** last month for our 25th wedding anniversary.

go back
visit again



By the time we **got back from** our cycle ride, it was already getting dark.

get back from
return from



We were supposed to hike to the mountain, but we **ended up** by the lake.

end up
arrive somewhere unintentionally



Marimar and I **went off to** Miami recently.

go off (to)
go on a trip or vacation



It was great to **get away** for a few days!

get away
go somewhere for a break or to relax

Hi Paula,
 We're having a great time in Cyprus.
 Our hotel overlooks the sea. We **soak up** the
 atmosphere each morning as we have our
 coffee. We're **packing in** lots of sightseeing.
 We saw some ruins and a vineyard today.
 We're **heading for** Athens today. We can't
 wait! We'll **bring you back** some local olives.
 They're delicious!
 See you soon!
 Ted and Sandy



Our hotel overlooks the sea. We **soak up**
 the atmosphere each morning as
 we have our coffee.

soak up
 look and listen, enjoy



We're **packing in** lots of sightseeing during
 our vacation. We saw some ruins and a
 vineyard today.

pack in
 include (a lot of something)



We've been in Cyprus for a few days, but
 we're **heading for** Athens today.

head for
 move towards a certain destination



We **brought you back** some local olives.
 They're delicious!

bring back
 return with



Whenever we **set out on** a hike, we always
 take waterproofs, a compass, and a map.

set out (on)
 start a journey



We **set off for** Chicago at dawn when there
 would be less traffic on the roads.

set off (for)
 start a journey



On our way to Barcelona, we **stopped over**
 in a lovely hotel for the night.

stop over
 stay somewhere on the way to
 somewhere else



We managed to **put** the tent **up** even
 though it was raining heavily.

put up
 put together, erect





35.2 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR



get away ☒ get up ☐



1 get under ☐ get around ☐



2 check on ☐ check in ☐



3 get back from ☐ get back to ☐



4 put out ☐ put up ☐



5 soak in ☐ soak up ☐

Aa

35.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

to

get

Anton

moped

around

the

hired

city.

a

Anton hired a moped to get around the city.

brought

olives.

We

you

local

back

some

1 _____

hotel.

They

out

the

checked

of

2 _____

Miami

I

and

off

Marimar

recently.

went

to

3 _____

great

away

days!

get

few

a

for

It

to

was

4 _____

Aa

35.4 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDING

During his vacation in Rome,

we stopped over in a hotel for the night.

1 On our way to Barcelona,

Julia went to the reception to check in.

2 Whenever we set out on a hike,

Anton hired a moped to get around the city.

3 We set off for Chicago at dawn

even though it was raining heavily.

4 When she arrived at the hotel,

we always take a compass and a map.

5 We managed to put the tent up

when there would be less traffic.

Aa

35.5 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL

By the time we got back from our cycle ride, it was dark.

arrived at

1 When Krishna _____ the villa, the party had begun.



pass by

2 We're _____ lots of sightseeing during our vacation.



heading for

3 It was great to _____ for a few days.

~~got back from~~

4 We've been in Cyprus all week, but we're _____ Athens today.



get away

5 On your way to London, you'll _____ Cambridge.



packing in

36 Talking

36.1 TALKING

Ben's not keen on buying a new car.
I'm trying to **talk him round**.

talk round (UK)
manage to persuade someone



Marco is always **talking at** people. He never gives them a chance to speak.

talk at
talk to someone without letting them speak



Shona wanted to dye her hair green, but her sister **talked her out of** it.

talk out of
persuade someone not to do something



Uncle Toby still **talks down to** me like I'm a child, even though I'm 25.

talk down to
talk in a patronizing way to



We were chatting about movies when Tina **launched into** a speech about her favorite actors.

launch into
suddenly begin speaking with enthusiasm about something



Kirsty **talked** the workers **through** the new software system.

talk through
explain how something works



My kids **talked me into** getting a puppy. They've promised to take care of it.

talk into
persuade someone to do something



Every time Rita tries to say something, Greg **talks over** her.

talk over
talk loudly while someone else is talking



While Julia was explaining her idea, Rupert **cut in** to tell her she was wrong.

cut in
interrupt



Simone spent the whole of lunch **mouth off** about how much she hates her new boss.

mouth off
talk negatively about something or someone (informal)



Shut up and listen
to me for once!



shut up
stop talking (rude)

I think you should **tone down**
your language.

tone down
make your language less strong

I couldn't hear Louise at all. The man
next to us was completely
drowning her out.

drown out
talk louder than someone else



Lauren **comes out with** the funniest
things. Today she told me she
wants to live on the Moon.

come out with
say something surprising



Diana is always **rambling on** about how
things were better when she was a child.

ramble on
*talk for a long time about something
(in an annoying or incoherent way)*



The lecturer **droned on** for what felt like
hours. We were half asleep by the end.

drone on
*talk for a long time in a
very boring way*



Craig was trying to tell a joke, but **tailed off**
as he realized that no one was listening.

tail off
stop talking gradually



After the concert, I **struck up** a conversation
with one of the guitarists.

strike up
start a conversation



When soccer **came up in** conversation,
Bill and I realized we support
the same team.

come up (in)
*be mentioned in conversation,
usually unexpectedly*



Andy **blurted out** the name of
the winner. It was supposed
to be a secret.

blurt out
*say something without thinking
about it first*



Aa

36.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDING

Every time Rita tries to say something,

through the new software system.

1 Kirsty talked the workers

getting a puppy.

2 Shona wanted to dye her hair purple,

Greg talks over her.

3 Diana is always rambling on about

and listen to me for once!

4 Uncle Toby still talks down to me

how things were better when she was a child.

5 Shut up

like I'm a child, even though I'm 25.

6 My kids talked me into

but her sister talked her out of it.

Aa

36.3 MATCH THE VERBS TO THE CORRECT PARTICLES TO MAKE PHRASAL VERBS

strike

down

1 drown

into

2 mouth

up

3 ramble

out

4 tone

on

5 talk

through

6 launch

off



36.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A B C D E F

Aa

36.5 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL

Uncle Toby still talks down to me like I'm a child, even though I'm 25.



droned on

struck up

~~talks down to~~

talking at

tone down

blurted out

① I think you should _____ your language.



② Andy _____ the name of the winner by mistake.



③ The lecturer _____ for what felt like hours.



④ Marco is always _____ people and not letting them speak.



⑤ After the concert, I _____ a conversation with the guitarist.



Aa

36.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Lauren **goes out with** the funniest things. Today she told me she wants to live on the Moon.

Lauren comes out with the funniest things. Today she told me she wants to live on the Moon.

① Ben's not keen on buying a new car. I'm trying to **talk** him **straight**.

② When soccer **came down in** conversation, Bill and I realized we support the same team.

③ Craig was trying to tell a joke, but **tailed up** as he realized that no one was listening.

④ While Julia was explaining her idea, Rupert **chopped in** to tell her she was wrong.

⑤ Simone spent the whole of lunch **teething off** about how much she hates her new boss.

37 Reading and writing

37.1 WRITING

Before you can use the gym, you need to **fill in** this form.

fill in
complete a form



Miguel **scribbled down** a note to his housemate to say that he was going out for the evening.

scribble down
write something quickly or roughly



Ted always **writes out** his essays instead of typing them.

write out
write something in full by hand



Celia read through her notes from today's lecture and **typed them up**.

type up
type something from written notes



The journalist **jotted down** the details as Dan described his role in the new movie.

jot down
make written notes quickly



37.2 READING

I've only **dipped into** Nia's new novel, but it's fantastic so far.

dip into
read short parts of a book or text



We **pored over** the old document looking for clues.

pore over
read with great attention



It **stands for** Unidentified Flying Object.

What does UFO mean?

stand for
represent, be an abbreviation for



Adventures in the Wilderness should **make for** interesting reading!

make for
result in



Your essay's too long, Marcel. You need to **cut it down** a bit.



Okay. I'll try to **cut out** 500 words.

cut down
reduce in size

cut out
remove material from a text

When I write a restaurant review I usually **write down** a few thoughts while I'm eating.

write down
record information by writing it



I **wrote up** my review at home later that evening.

write up
write or type something in full from notes



When completing the form, Damian **wrote in** his age.

write in
enter information by writing it



Paco read the book and **noted down** the most important points.

note down
make written notes



Alexandra **flicked through** a magazine while she waited to get her hair cut.

flick through
look through a book or magazine quickly or casually



Max **read through** the full report before giving his opinion.

read through
read something from start to finish



As the judge **read out** the names of the winners, Pablo waited hopefully.

read out
read aloud (for others to hear)



Fatima **read up on** ancient Greece before her history exam.

read up on
research or revise a topic








Aa

37.3 MATCH THE PHRASAL VERBS TO THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

	read out	write something quickly or roughly
1	note down	read with great attention
2	cut down	read aloud (for others to hear)
3	write up	complete a form
4	scribble down	write or type something in full from notes
5	stand for	reduce in size
6	pore over	represent, be an abbreviation for
7	fill in	make written notes

Aa

37.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

	I've only dipped into Nia's new novel, but it's fantastic so far.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	I've only dipped over Nia's new novel, but it's fantastic so far.	<input type="checkbox"/>
1 	Before you can use the gym, you need to fill in this form.	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Before you can use the gym, you need to fill on this form.	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 	As the judge read in the names of the winners, Pablo waited hopefully.	<input type="checkbox"/>
	As the judge read out the names of the winners, Pablo waited hopefully.	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 	When completing the form, Damian wrote on his age.	<input type="checkbox"/>
	When completing the form, Damian wrote in his age.	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 	Alexandra flicked through a magazine while she waited to get her hair cut.	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Alexandra flicked above a magazine while she waited to get her hair cut.	<input type="checkbox"/>

Aa

37.5 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL



Miguel scribbled down a note to his housemate to say that he was going out.



③ "UFO" _____ Unidentified Flying Object.



① Max _____ the full report before giving his opinion.



④ The journalist _____ the details as Dan described his role in the new movie.



② Ted always _____ his essays instead of typing them.



⑤ Fatima _____ on ancient Greece before her history exam.

stands for ~~scribbled down~~ read up writes out jotted down read through

Aa

37.6 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL TO CREATE PHRASAL VERBS

When I write a restaurant review, I usually write down a few thoughts while I'm eating.

- ① I'll try to cut 500 words from my essay if it is too long.
- ② *Adventures in the Wilderness* should make interesting reading!
- ③ Paco read the book and noted the most important points.
- ④ We pored the old document looking for clues.

for out ~~down~~ over down

38 Keeping in touch

See also: break up 3, 15, 21, 29 get through (to) 33 hang up 6 pass on 32 pick up 9, 10, 11, 28, 31 put through 55 send off 33

38.1 ON THE PHONE

I had to call Megan six times before she finally **picked up** the phone.

pick up
answer a phone call



Hi Laura, sorry I'm cooking at the moment. Can I **call you back** in 10 minutes?

call back
return a call, phone someone who tried to speak to you earlier



Anna works from home on Tuesdays, so she will **dial into** the meeting.

dial in(to)
join a conference call



After chatting for over an hour, Simon and I said goodbye and **hung up**.

hang up
end a phone call (often suddenly)



Could you please **speak up**? I can't hear you very well!

speak up
talk more loudly



I've called Olly a few times this evening, but I can't **get through**.

get through (to)
make contact with someone by phone



Sorry, I can't hear you very well, I'm afraid. You keep **breaking up**.

break up
become difficult to hear (because of a bad signal or connection)



I **phoned around** to ask if any of my friends wanted to go to the beach with me.

phone around
phone several people



Could I speak to Mr. Yamamoto, please?

Certainly. I'll **put you through** now, madam.

put through (to)
connect someone to the person they want to speak to



38.2 LEAVING A MESSAGE

Dave **passed on** a message telling me that Rob had called.

pass on
give someone a message that someone else has given to you



Rob wants to **follow up on** the conversation we had about the new logo.

follow up on
find out more information, do something in response to something



He asked me to **get back to him** as soon as possible.

get back (to)
reply to a phone call or email, contact someone (with a response to a question)



Hi Ulrika,

Rob called and asked me to **pass on** a message. He wants to **follow up on** your chat about the new logo last week. Can you **get back to** him as soon as you can?

Dave

38.3 SENDING AND REPLYING

I love receiving letters from my dad. I always **write back** immediately.

write back
reply by letter or email



I sent Paul a text asking him where he was. He **texted back** saying he was on the train.

text back
reply by text message



Our company is trying to **reach out to** new customers by offering discounts.

reach out (to)
contact



Claudia **sent** wedding invitations **out to** all her friends and family.

send out (to)
send to a group of people



Chris emailed me a week ago, but I only just remembered to **email him back**.

email back
reply by email



Murat completed all the forms and **sent** them **off to** the passport office.

send off (to)
send something by post or email



Aa

38.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

I had to call Megan six times before she finally picked ~~out~~ / ~~over~~ / up the phone.

- 1 Rob wants to chase / follow / catch up on the conversation we had about the new logo.
- 2 Claudia sent wedding invitations up / off / out to all her friends and family.
- 3 Dave passed up / off / on a message telling me that Rob had called.
- 4 Sorry, I can't hear you very well, I'm afraid. You keep crumbling / breaking / tearing up.
- 5 I've called Olly a few times this evening, but I can't get among / into / through.
- 6 Could you please speak down / on / up? I can't hear you very well!

Aa

38.5 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Murat completed all the forms and sent them off to the passport office.

1



I sent Paul a text asking him where he was. He texted back saying he was on the train.

2



Claudia sent wedding invitations out to all her friends and family.

3



Chris emailed me a week ago, but I only just remembered to email him back.

4



I love receiving letters from my dad. I always write back immediately.



38.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MATCH THE IMAGES TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS



1



2



3



4



pick up

speak up

call back

hang up

put through

Aa

38.7 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

back

get

to

He asked me to get back to him as soon as possible.

the

into

dial

1 Anna works from home on Tuesdays, so she will _____ meeting.

through

you

put

2 I'll _____ to Mr. Yamamoto now, madam.

reach

to

out

3 Our company is trying to _____ new customers by offering discounts.

up

hung

and

4 After chatting for over an hour, Simon and I said goodbye _____.

back

you

call

5 Hi Laura, sorry I'm cooking at the moment, can I _____ in 10 minutes?

39 Thoughts and ideas

See also: come across 1, 52
think through 50
throw out 17

39.1 IDEAS

They **bombarded** us **with** too much information during the training course.

bombard with
ask too many questions, give too much information



Gill and the design team are **bouncing** ideas **off** each other before the show next week.

bounce off
exchange creative ideas to see how other people respond to them



The president's speech **touched on** the economy, healthcare, and education.

touch on
briefly mention something in a talk or text



I wrote a proposal for more environmentally friendly policies and **put it to** the directors.

put to
make a suggestion so that others can choose to accept it or not



When my husband suggested buying a new kitchen, I **ran with** it.

run with
do what someone suggests



When I told my friends I was starting my own business, they all **got behind** the idea.

get behind
offer support to someone



The creative manager asked her team to **throw out** as many ideas as they could.

throw out
suggest lots of spontaneous ideas



We have **ruled out** three of the candidates. It's a choice between Danny and Carmen.

rule out
remove someone or something as an option when making a choice



Ted has **come up with** some good ideas for a new logo.

come up with
think of an idea, suggestion, or plan



He decided to **put forward** the version with the star.

put forward
offer an opinion, idea, or suggestion



39.2 REALIZING THINGS

The artist's feelings of anger **come across** very strongly in this painting.

come across
be communicated



Experts have **attributed** this painting to Joan Miró because of the distinctive style.

attribute to
believe that a certain person said or created something



It finally **dawned on** me that Claude was the killer.

dawn on
become clear to someone



It had never **occurred to** me that such a charming character could commit such a terrible crime.

occur to
suddenly come into someone's mind



39.3 THOUGHTS

While writing her memoir, Rebecca **reflected on** her childhood.

reflect on
carefully think about something



Before deciding whether or not to move to Canada, we need to **think it through**.

think through
considering the advantages and disadvantages of something



Selma is very creative. She **thinks up** lots of wonderful dishes.

think up
invent a new plan or idea in your mind



There's a lot to think about when buying a house, but it often **boils down to** money.

boil down to
be the most important reason



I asked Zoya if she'd like to work for us. She's **thinking it over**, and will let us know tomorrow.

think over
carefully think about a plan or idea before making a decision



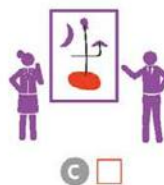
The teacher asked us all to **think of** a famous person from history and write a story about them.

think of
create a mental image of something or someone





39.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



Aa

39.5 MATCH UP THE PAIRS OF SENTENCES THAT MEAN THE SAME THING

The president's speech touched on the economy, healthcare, and education.

When I told my friends I was starting my own business, they all offered support.

1 When my husband suggested buying a new kitchen, I ran with it.

The president's speech briefly mentioned the economy, healthcare, and education.

2 When I told my friends I was starting my own business, they all got behind the idea.

Experts believe that Joan Miró created this painting because of the distinctive style.

3 They bombarded us with too much information during the training course.

When my husband suggested buying a new kitchen, I did what he suggested.

4 Experts have attributed this painting to Joan Miró because of the distinctive style.

The artist's feelings of anger are communicated strongly in this painting.

5 The artist's feelings of anger come across strongly in this painting.

They gave us too much information during the training course.

Aa

39.6 WRITE THE PHRASAL VERBS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

SEPARABLE

INSEPARABLE

run with

come across

bounce off

come up with

put to

get behind

think through

~~run with~~

bombard with

touch on

think over

Aa

39.7 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING PHRASAL VERBS



While writing her memoir, Rebecca
reflected on her childhood.



③ We have _____ three of the
candidates. It's a choice between Danny and Carmen.



① The creative manager asked her team to
_____ as many ideas as they could.



④ Ted has _____ some good ideas
for a new logo.



② It finally _____ me that
Claude was the killer.



⑤ Selma is very creative. She _____
lots of wonderful dishes.

40 Explaining things

See also:
fill in 37

40.1 EXPLAINING THINGS

The politician **alluded to** housing in his speech, but mostly spoke about transportation.

allude to
mention something indirectly



How many times do I have to **spell it out** to you? You're not allowed to use your phone in class.

spell out
explain something very clearly (usually with anger or frustration)



During her speech, the senator kept **coming back to** her financial policies.

come back to
return to a subject



The interviewer asked me to **expand on** my experience of working with animals.

expand on
give more details about something



I asked the professor if he could **go back over** some of the points from the lecture.

go back over
explain the details of something again



Pete couldn't remember the French word for "swimming," so he **acted it out**.

act out
explain or show something by performing or re-enacting it



Yuri managed to **put his ideas across** very well during the debate.

put across
successfully explain an idea or express a feeling



My friend **pointed out** some of the mistakes I'd made in my code.

point out
help someone to notice something



Becky asked Sarah to **fill her in on** the latest gossip from the office.

fill (someone) in (on)
provide the latest or most important information about something



Gio didn't know anything about computers, so he asked the salesperson to **dumb it down** for him.

dumb down
make something easier to understand





40.2 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR



spell out ☒
allude to ☐



1 expand on ☐
point out ☐



2 act out ☐
dumb down ☐



3 come back to ☐
expand on ☐



4 fill in on ☐
point out ☐



5 put across ☐
go back over ☐

Aa

40.3 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

give more details about something

= e x p a n d o n

☐ successfully explain an idea or express a feeling = p a

☐ make something easier to understand = d d

☐ help someone to notice something = p o

☐ return to a subject = c b t

☐ mention something indirectly = a t

☐ explain the details of something again = g b o

41 Truth and lies

41.1 TRUTH

I never **caught on** that Dad's company was in such debt.

catch on
realize something is happening



Conan finally **owned up to** breaking the window. He'd been denying it all morning.

own up (to)
admit that something was your fault



When it **came out** that he was bankrupt, I was shocked!

come out
become known



I have to **level with** you, Anu. The cake looks lovely, but it tastes terrible.

level with
tell someone the truth



41.2 LIES

We **fell for** the salesman's talk. The car we bought broke down after a few days.

fall for
be tricked into believing something



Tyler has been promising to pay me back for months, but he's just **stringing me along**.

string along
give someone false hopes or make them believe something that is false



After eating all the cake, John tried to **cover it up** by claiming the dog had eaten it.

cover up
hide the truth from other people



Pio's always **making up** excuses for handing in his homework late. Today, he claimed his school bag had been stolen.

make up
invent a story to explain something



Alice accused me of **messing her around** when I canceled our date for a third time.

mess around
treat someone badly by deceiving them or changing plans regularly



Larry's claim that he was at home on the night of the crime didn't **add up**.

add up
make sense, be a logical explanation



See also:

add up 14, 25 come out 5, 12 cover up 6 fall for 3 make out 52
make up 44, 52 mess around 21 put on 6, 27, 55

It's really hard to **suss** the new neighbors **out**.
They don't say anything about themselves.

suss out (UK)
understand what someone wants,
or what kind of person they are



I've been trying to **find out** from
Nisha who Sammy's dating.

find out
discover information



Gary was always exaggerating about
how rich he was, but Safiya could
see through his lies.

see through
be aware that something is not true



I think she knows more
than she's **letting on**.

let on
admit or reveal something



Amrit promised his mother he'd stay home
and study, but she **caught him out** when
she heard him come home late.

catch out
discover that someone is lying



Josie tried to **explain away** the damage to
my car by saying it was just a small scratch.

explain away
try to persuade someone that a bad situation
is not important or not your fault



The CEO has been **playing down** the
company's financial problems.

play down
make a problem seem unimportant



Mario **glossed over** the bad result, claiming
the team would soon be back on form.

gloss over
try to make bad news or a
mistake seem unimportant



Kirstie's been **making out** that
everything's okay, but I know she's
stressed about her interview.

make out
pretend



It looked as if Aaron had been injured,
but I knew he was **putting it on**.

put on
pretend



Aa

41.3 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS

	discover that someone is lying	see through
1	be aware that something is not true	level with
2	try to make bad news or a mistake seem unimportant	catch out
3	hide the truth from other people	add up
4	make sense, be a logical explanation	cover up
5	be tricked into believing something	gloss over
6	invent a story to explain something	fall for
7	tell someone the truth	make up



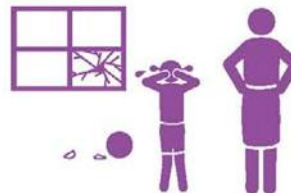
41.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR

suss out <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	explain away <input type="checkbox"/>	see through <input type="checkbox"/>
1 play down <input type="checkbox"/>	make up <input type="checkbox"/>	make out <input type="checkbox"/>
2 cover up <input type="checkbox"/>	come out <input type="checkbox"/>	level with <input type="checkbox"/>
3 let on <input type="checkbox"/>	find out <input type="checkbox"/>	mess around <input type="checkbox"/>
4 gloss over <input type="checkbox"/>	string along <input type="checkbox"/>	add up <input type="checkbox"/>
5 put on <input type="checkbox"/>	catch out <input type="checkbox"/>	own up <input type="checkbox"/>
6 catch on <input type="checkbox"/>	explain away <input type="checkbox"/>	fall for <input type="checkbox"/>

41.5 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL



I never caught on that Dad's company was in such debt.



4 Conan finally owned up to breaking the window. He'd been denying it all morning.



1 I think she knows more than she's letting on.



5 The CEO has been explaining away the company's financial problems.



2 We fell for the salesman's talk. The car we bought broke down after a few days.



6 I've been trying to find out from Nisha who Sammy's dating.



3 When it came out that he was bankrupt, I was shocked!



7 Josie tried to play down the damage to my car by saying it was just a small scratch.

fell for

explain away

find out

letting on

owned up

came out

~~caught on~~

playing down

42 Encouragement

42.1 ENCOURAGEMENT AND PERSUASION

The thought of winning first prize **spurred** Farukh **on**.

spur on
encourage someone, inspire someone
to do something



Helen has **put** me **onto** this great new hair salon. I'm going to check it out.

put onto
tell someone about something
they might find useful



When Zoe asked her daughter why she'd stolen the cookies, she said her elder brother had **put** her **up to** it.

put up to
encourage someone to do
something that is wrong



Lisa's speech in favor of a new nature reserve has **brought** many people **around** to the idea.

bring around
persuade someone to support
your idea



Kendra was very nervous, but was happy to see her friends **rooting** for her.

root for
show your support for someone



My son was upset, so I bought him an ice cream to **buck** him **up**.

buck up
make someone feel happier



Marcus's friends **egged** him **on** as he climbed the tree.

egg on
encourage someone to do something
(often something naughty)



The crowd **urged** Mona **on** as she approached the end of the tightrope.

urge on
encourage someone
to do something



Rahul was skeptical about electric cars until the salesman **reasoned** with him.

reason with
offer logical arguments to try
to change someone's mind



He eventually **won** him **over** by explaining how eco-friendly they are.

win over
successfully persuade someone
to support your idea



42.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

The thought of winning first prize spurred Farukh on.



The thought of winning first prize spurred Farukh off.



① Helen has put me onto this great new hair salon. I'm going to check it out.



Helen has taken me onto this great new hair salon. I'm going to check it out.



② Lisa's speech in favor of a new nature reserve has brought many people around to the idea.



Lisa's speech in favor of a new nature reserve has brought many people about to the idea.



③ Kendra was very nervous, but was happy to see her friends planting for her.



Kendra was very nervous, but was happy to see her friends rooting for her.



④ Zoe's daughter said her elder brother had put her up to stealing the cookies.



Zoe's daughter said her elder brother had put her onto stealing the cookies.



42.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



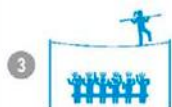
Marcus's friends egged him on as he climbed the tree.



① Kendra was very nervous, but was happy to see her friends _____ her.



② Rahul was skeptical about electric cars until the salesman _____ him.



③ The crowd _____ Mona _____ as she approached the end of the tightrope.



④ He eventually _____ him _____ by explaining how eco-friendly they are.



⑤ My son was upset, so I bought him an ice cream to _____ him _____.

43 Agreeing and disagreeing

43.1 AGREEING AND DISAGREEING

Everyone **agrees with** John that Sian should get the job.

agree with
have the same opinion as someone



I want to go on an expensive vacation this year. I'm trying to persuade my husband to **go along with** the idea.

go along with
unwillingly agree to do something



I can always **count on** my sister to comfort me when I'm upset.

count on
rely on someone



During the debate, the politician **hit out at** her opponents.

hit out at
strongly criticize someone



Our local representative has **come out against** the plans for a new housing development.

come out against
reveal your opposition to something in public



Martin and Simon **disagreed with** each other about what color to paint the kitchen.

disagree with
believe that someone or something is wrong



My aunt **frowns on** people wearing shoes indoors. She makes her friends take them off when they visit.

frown on
disapprove of something



Laura **objected to** Ankita's proposals for the new restaurant.

object to
be opposed to something



Danny **pulled Roberta up on** her attitude towards the environment.

pull up on (UK)
criticize someone for a particular thing



Whenever there's a disagreement at work, Paulina always **sides with** our boss. It's so irritating!

side with
support someone in an argument



Carla **stood up to** the bullies. She told them to stop being mean to her brother.

stand up to
*defend someone or yourself
against someone else*



The workers at the factory are **pushing back on** the management's attempt to introduce a pay cut.

push back (on)
resist or oppose something



I think Sonia **has** something **against** me. She never wants to talk to me.

have (something) against
dislike someone for an unknown reason



My idea was **shot down** by the panel before I had a chance to explain it to them.

shoot down
reject an idea



When Emily's boss accused her of being lazy, she **fought back** by showing him the clothes she had made that morning.

fight back
*respond to someone who
has criticized you*



43.2 AVOIDING CONFLICT

Terry's colleagues always make fun of his shirts, but he just **laughs it off**.

laugh off
*deal with criticism or a difficult
situation by laughing at it*



Donna bought her brother some chocolates to **make up for** the things she had said to him.

make up for
*do something positive to
correct a mistake*



Paul usually **shrugs off** criticism of his cooking.

shrug off
*treat something as if
it is not important*



The two companies have almost reached a deal. They just need to **iron out** a few last details.

iron out
solve small problems or details



Everyone criticized Magda's art when she started, but she **rose above** it and is a successful artist now.

rise above
*not let criticism or a difficult
situation affect you badly*



Aa

43.3 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



I can count on my sister to comfort me when I'm upset.



Laura objected to Ankita's proposals for a new restaurant.



He pulled her up on her attitude towards the environment.



During the debate, she hit out at her opponents.



Paul usually shrugs off criticism of his cooking.



Carla stood up to the bullies and told them not to be mean.



43.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR

A make up for ☐

B fight back ☐

C hit out at ☒

D go along with ☐

E shoot down ☐

F iron out ☐

G side with ☐

H object to ☐

I frown on ☐

Aa

43.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Paulina always sides ~~up~~ / **with** / ~~on~~ our boss. It's so irritating!

- 1 Everyone agrees **with** / **on** / **for** John that Sian should get the job.
- 2 Everyone criticized Magda's art, but she rose **above** / **for** / **on** it and is a successful artist now.
- 3 The workers are pushing **up for** / **back on** / **out of** the management's policies.
- 4 They disagreed **with** / **of** / **on** each other about what color to paint the kitchen.

Paul usually shrugs off criticism of his cooking.

Paul listens to criticism. ☐

Paul doesn't listen to criticism. ☒

Criticism helps Paul improve. ☐

3 Laura objected to Ankita's proposals.

☐ Laura liked Ankita's proposals. ☐

Laura supported Ankita's proposals. ☐

Laura opposed Ankita's proposals. ☐

1 My aunt frowns on people wearing shoes indoors.

☐ My aunt disapproves. ☐

My aunt wears shoes indoors. ☐

My aunt doesn't wear shoes at all. ☐

4 Carla stood up to the bullies.

☐ Carla did not defend herself. ☐

Carla defended herself. ☐

Carla was one of the bullies. ☐

2 Paulina always sides with our boss.

☐ Paulina never supports our boss. ☐

Paulina doesn't like our boss. ☐

Paulina always supports our boss. ☐

5 They just need to iron out a few last details.

☐ They need to solve small problems. ☐

They need to create problems. ☐

They need to avoid problems. ☐

My idea was **shot up** by the panel before I had a chance to explain it to them.

My idea was shot down by the panel before I had a chance to explain it to them.



1 I think Sonia **has** something **about** me. She never wants to talk to me.



2 Martin and Simon **disagreed on** each other about what color to paint the kitchen.



3 Our local representative has **come out under** the plans for a new housing development.



4 Donna bought her brother some chocolates to **make up by** the things she had said to him.



5 Terry's colleagues always make fun of his shirts, but he just **laughs it over**.



44 Opinions and arguments

44.1 OFFERING OPINIONS

Sorry, I'm not sure what you're **getting at**.

get at
imply, try to say something indirectly



Anetta is always **speaking out** about environmental issues.

speak out
give your opinion publicly



The professor **weighed in on** the debate about the new power station.

weigh in on
add your opinion to an ongoing discussion



The manager **laid into** the players after they lost another match.

lay into
criticize someone in an angry way



Andy **lashed out at** someone who dropped litter in the street.

lash out (at)
criticize someone in an angry way



Farah makes sure to **base** all her arguments **on** facts.

base on
use facts or arguments to support your opinion



44.2 JOINING ARGUMENTS

Only one of my colleagues **stuck up for** me when my boss criticized my work.

stick up for
defend someone or something



Moira tried to **drag** Phil **into** her argument with the chef.

drag into
make someone join in an argument against their will



When Dad accused me of lying, Jo **backed me up** and told him I was telling the truth.

back up
give someone support by agreeing with them



Phil, however, preferred to **stay out of** it.

stay out of
avoid becoming involved in an argument



See also:

back up 12 climb down 19 fall out 49

make up 41, 52 take back 10, 16, 55

44.3 SURRENDERING, COMPROMISE, AND RECONCILIATION

Ben and Gus finally **made up** after their argument.

make up (with)
become friends again



They had **fallen out** when they both applied for the same job.

fall out (with)
have a disagreement with someone

Sam wanted his waiters to dress as hot dogs. He **backed down** when they threatened to quit.

back down
withdraw a demand or
admit you were wrong



When Pete showed Martin the facts, Martin had to **climb down** and admit he was wrong.

climb down (UK)
admit you are wrong (after
some resistance)



Kirsten had been threatening to fire Imran, but she **backed off** when he promised to work harder.

back off
withdraw a threat



Arun and Les **patched things up** after they had an argument.

patch up
sort out your differences and
become friends again



I'm sorry I said I didn't like your dress, Katie. I **take it back**.

take back
admit that what you said was wrong



I'm trying to **smooth things over** with Anna, so I bought her some flowers.

smooth over (with)
resolve a problem or disagreement



Craig's parents finally **caved in** and bought him a games console.

cave in
agree to something (after a lot
of resistance)



Ed hated Carla's new book, but he **watered down** his opinion when he wrote his review.

water down
make an opinion or proposal
less strong



44.4 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS

make someone join in an argument against their will

speak out

1 withdraw a threat

take back

2 give your opinion publicly

drag into

3 admit that what you said was wrong

stay out of

4 avoid becoming involved in an argument

base on

5 sort out your differences and become friends again

stick up for

6 use facts or arguments to support your opinion

back off

7 defend someone or something

patch up



44.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A



Anetta is always speaking out about environmental issues.

☐

B



Arun and Les patched things up after they had an argument.

☐

C



Ed hated Carla's new book, but he watered down his opinion in his review.

1

D



I'm sorry I said I didn't like your dress, Katie. I take it back.

☐

E



Farah makes sure to base all her arguments on facts.

☐

F



The professor weighed in on the debate about the new power station.

☐

Aa

44.6 WRITE THE PHRASAL VERBS FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

resolve a problem or disagreement

smooth over (with)



☐ defend someone or something



☐ withdraw a threat



☐ have a disagreement with someone



☐ avoid becoming involved in an argument



☐ criticize someone in an angry way



☐ give someone support by agreeing with them



☐ withdraw a demand or admit you were wrong



back up

lash out (at)

stick up for

back off

back down

stay out of

~~smooth over (with)~~

fall out (with)

Aa

44.7 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL TO CREATE PHRASAL VERBS

Ben and Gus finally made up after their argument.

- ① When Pete showed Martin the facts, Martin had to climb and admit he was wrong.
- ② The manager laid the players after they lost another match.
- ③ They had fallen when they both applied for the same job.
- ④ Craig's parents finally caved and bought him a games console.
- ⑤ Sorry, I'm not sure what you're getting.

out

in

~~up~~

down

at

into

45 Emotions

45.1 POSITIVE EMOTIONS

The children **burst out** laughing when the clown pretended to fall over.

burst out
suddenly begin (laughing or crying)



Craig had had a bad day at work, but watching a funny movie **cheered him up**.

cheer up
become happier or make
someone feel happier



Yana was upset, but she **brightened up** when I bought her some tickets to a concert.

brighten up
begin to feel happier



Anna hadn't been feeling great, but she **perked up** after a cup of tea and a cookie.

perk up
become happier or more lively



45.2 DEALING WITH EMOTIONS

When Linda feels stressed, she listens to music to help her **calm down**.

calm down
become calmer



I've been **checking up on** Andrei every day since he lost his job. He's been very upset.

check up on
check that someone is all right



I really **feel for** Kim. She's been so upset since her cat went missing.

feel for
feel sympathy toward someone



Petra's been sulking for days. I wish she'd **snap out of** it.

snap out of
suddenly improve your mood or behavior



Cory's daughter started to **settle down** as he sang her a soothing song.

settle down
become calmer



Jack's a very private person, but he finally **opened up** and told me how he feels.

open up
reveal your true feelings



See also:

brighten up 11 calm down 11 get over 32, 53 move on 20
open up 24 settle down 2 turn to 13, 21, 50 work through 20

Sophie needs to **lighten up**. She's still studying even though it's her birthday today.

lighten up

stop taking everything so seriously



Hiro's jokes are hilarious. He really **cracks me up**.

crack up

begin laughing or make someone laugh a lot



Patrick's love of music **shines through** when he starts playing his guitar.

shine through

be clear, easy to see (about a positive emotion or quality)



Donny's face **lit up** when he saw the presents waiting for him on the table.

light up

suddenly look happy



Kathy and Jamal broke up last month, but Kathy is still finding it hard to **get over** it.

get over

recover from a bad experience



Kathy is finally **moving on** after her break up with Jamal last year.

move on

stop thinking about someone or something



Ed's really **toughened up** after three years in the army.

toughen up

become physically or mentally stronger



Whenever I'm upset, I know I can **turn to** my sister.

turn to

ask someone for help



I see a therapist to help me **work through** my problems.

work through

deal with your problems in a systematic way



My therapist has helped me to **cope with** many of my problems.

cope with

manage, deal with a situation



Aa

45.3 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

The children burst out laughing.
 They suddenly stopped laughing. ☐
 They suddenly began laughing. ☒
 They did not laugh. ☐

① Ed's toughened up after joining the army.

☐ Ed's become stronger.

Ed's become weaker. ☐

Ed's not tough enough. ☐

② She has helped me cope with my problems.

☐ She has helped me create problems. ☐

She has helped me manage my problems. ☐

She has created problems for me. ☐

③ Kathy is trying to get over her breakup.

☐ Kathy is trying to recover from it. ☐

Kathy is breaking up with someone. ☐

Kathy has forgotten her breakup. ☐

④ Anna perked up after a cup of tea.

☐ Anna fell asleep. ☐

Anna became lazy. ☐

Anna became happier. ☐



45.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MATCH THE IMAGES TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS



burst out

①



settle down

②



shine through

③



light up

④



crack up

⑤



work through

Aa

45.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

I see a therapist to help me work ~~under~~ / through / ~~over~~ my problems.

① Donny's face lit ~~up~~ / out / off when he saw the presents waiting for him on the table.

② Jack's a very private person, but he finally opened ~~on~~ / up / in and told me how he feels.

③ When Linda feels stressed, she listens to music to help her calm ~~up~~ / down / out.

④ The children burst ~~off~~ / in / out laughing when the clown pretended to fall over.

Aa

45.6 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

down

settle

to

Cory's daughter started to settle down as he sang her a soothing song.

up

on

checking

① I've been _____ Andrei every day since he lost his job.

up

cheered

him

② Craig had had a bad day at work, but watching a funny movie _____.

up

me

cracks

③ Hiro's jokes are hilarious. He really _____.

when

brightened

up

④ Yana was upset, but she _____ I bought her tickets to a concert.

Aa

45.7 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Whenever I'm upset, I know I can **turn around** my sister.Whenever I'm upset, I know I can turn to my sister.① Sophie needs to **lighten down**. She's still studying even though it's her birthday today.② I really **feel about** Kim. She's been so upset since her cat went missing.③ Kathy is finally **moving off** after her breakup with Jamal last year.④ Petra's been sulking for days. I wish she'd **snap in of** it.

46 Negative emotions

46.1 NEGATIVE EMOTIONS

Chris had been **bottling up** his emotions for a long time.

bottle up

feel unable to show your emotions to others



He eventually **broke down** and admitted that he was really upset.

break down

start to cry



Andy **fell apart** when I told him that I was moving to another country.

fall apart

become very emotional, lose control



This song is so moving. It always **sets me off**.

set off

make someone start crying



It really **gets to** me when people leave their trash on the metro.

get to

irritate or upset someone



Tamal and Sam **choked up** when the hero died at the end of the movie.

choke up

become emotional or upset



I'm sick of my neighbors arguing. It's been **getting me down** for months.

get down

make someone feel depressed



Bella **welled up** when Pete asked her to marry him.

well up

have your eyes fill with tears, start to cry



Stop **taking it out on** me. It's not my fault the weather is awful.

take out on

behave in a bad way to someone even though it is not their fault



When Lisa walked onto the stage she **froze up**. She couldn't say anything!

freeze up

suddenly become unable to communicate

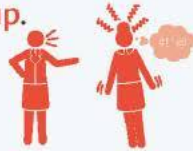


See also:

break down 9, 50 fall apart 49 get down 19, 53
get to 53 set off 35, 53

Sadie's anger about her boss's rude behavior had been **building up**.

build up
become bigger or stronger



It eventually **spilled over**, and Sadie told her how she felt.

spill over
start to show (in an uncontrollable way)



Simone's eyes **misted over** as she told me about her childhood in the countryside.

mist over
(about eyes) fill with tears



Clare **flew into** a rage when her computer crashed and lost all her work.

fly into
(about temper, rage, or panic) suddenly become very angry or scared



My husband **tenses up** whenever I try to talk about money with him.

tense up
suddenly become tense or anxious



Troy **freaked out** when he noticed the enormous spider climbing up the wall.

freak out
become very upset or afraid (informal)



My grandchildren love to **wind me up**. They're always playing tricks on me.

wind up (UK)
tease someone, make someone angry



Work has been **weighing on** me a lot recently.

weigh on
make someone feel worried or unhappy



My manager is usually very understanding, but he **blew up** when I told him that I'd left my work laptop on the train.

blow up
suddenly become very angry



46.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- It really gets to me when
- 1 My husband tenses up whenever
- 2 This song is so moving.
- 3 Troy freaked out when he noticed
- 4 Clare flew into a rage when
- 5 Stop taking it out on me.
- 6 My grandchildren love to wind me up.
- I try to talk about money with him.
- her computer crashed and lost all her work.
- They're always playing tricks on me.
- people leave their trash on the metro.
- the enormous spider climbing up the wall.
- It always sets me off.
- It's not my fault the weather is awful.



46.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE

Simone's eyes misted over as she told me about her childhood in the countryside.



- 1 Sadie's anger about her boss's rude behavior had been _____.



- 2 Tamal and Sam _____ when the hero died at the end of the movie.



- 3 When Lisa walked onto the stage she _____. She couldn't say anything!



- 4 He eventually _____ and admitted that he was really upset.



- 5 My manager _____ when I told him that I'd left my work laptop on the train.



Aa

46.4 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL



Andy fell apart when I told him that I was moving to another country.



3 Chris had been _____ his emotions for a long time.



1 Bella _____ when Pete asked her to marry him.



4 Work has been _____ me a lot recently.



2 It eventually _____, and Sadie told her how she felt.



5 Clare _____ a rage when her computer crashed and lost all her work.

spilled over

flew into

~~fell apart~~

bottling up

welled up

weighing on

Aa

46.5 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

make someone start crying

=

s e t o f f☐ make someone feel depressed

=

g _____ d _____☐ tease someone, make someone angry

=

w _____ u _____☐ start to cry

=

b _____ d _____☐ suddenly become very angry

=

b _____ u _____

47 Making decisions

47.1 MAKING DECISIONS

Lisa found it hard to choose a dress, but eventually **decided on** the red one.

decide on
reach a decision



After a lot of thought, Rob **went for** the fish instead of the steak.

go for
choose



Moving to New Zealand next year **hinges on** us saving enough money.

hinge on
depend completely
on something



It's so hard to choose! I'm **leaning toward** the red sports car.

lean toward
be more likely to choose
one option than another



Marie didn't know which new job to accept, so she decided to **sleep on** it.

sleep on
wait until the next day before
making a decision



Shona regrets her decision to quit, but she's going to have to **live with** it.

live with
accept an unpleasant decision
or situation



We loved your plans for the new apartment block. But our decision **came down to** funding.

come down to
depend on one point



After so many failures, Stephen's **banking on** this new recipe to impress his guests.

bank on
depend on



We were sure our café would be a success, but forgot to **factor in** the local competition.

factor in
take into consideration



Can you tell us how you
settled on a winner?



settle on
choose (after thinking about or discussing it)

We **arrived at** our decision
after looking carefully at
each of the paintings.



arrive at
reach, come to a decision

The workers wanted a 5% pay raise,
but eventually **settled for** 3%.

settle for
*agree to something although
it is not what you first wanted*



Yasmin has been **toying with** the
idea of getting her hair cut short,
but has never done it.

toy with
consider, play with an idea



Paula **weighed up** her options before
deciding which camera to buy.

weigh up
*consider positive and negative
things before making a decision*



Somrita has been **mulling over**
which candidate to hire.

mull over
*think about something for some
time before making a decision*



Ahmed's **betting on** it being a hot summer
this year so he's bought
an ice-cream van.

bet on
act on a hope or prediction



We have **narrowed down** our list
of potential homes to
two properties.

narrow down
reduce the number of choices



Sonia **opted out** of the boat trip.
She always gets sea sick.

opt out (of)
choose not to do something



Archie **picked out** the toy he
wanted for his birthday.

pick out
choose carefully from a group



47.2 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Somrita has been mulling ~~in~~ / **over** / ~~on~~ which candidate to hire.



1 Sonia opted **over** / **on** / **out** of the boat trip. She always gets sea sick.



2 Yasmin has been toying **on** / **with** / **to** the idea of getting her hair cut short.



3 The workers wanted a 5% pay raise, but settled **out** / **for** / **in** 3%.



4 Shona regrets her decision to quit, but she's going to have to live **with** / **in** / **on** it.



5 After a lot of thought, Rob went **on** / **out** / **for** the fish instead of the steak.

47.3 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS

depend completely on something

decide on

1 reach a decision

opt out

2 take into consideration

hinge on

3 think about something before making a decision

pick out

4 choose carefully from a group

factor in

5 choose not to do something

lean toward

6 be more likely to choose one option than another

mull over



47.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR



bet on ☒
bet in ☐



① weigh up ☐
weigh out ☐



② narrow down ☐
narrow up ☐



③ pick over ☐
pick out ☐



④ sleep on ☐
sleep in ☐



⑤ lean toward ☐
lean on ☐

Aa

47.5 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

up

weighed

her

Paula weighed up her options before deciding which camera to buy.

on

us

hinges

① Moving to New Zealand next year _____ saving enough money.

on

settled

a

② Can you tell us how you _____ winner?

decided

the

on

③ Lisa found it hard to choose a dress, but eventually _____ red one.

this

on

banking

④ Stephen is _____ new recipe to impress his guests.

48 Making mistakes

48.1 MAKING MISTAKES

Coralie's graph didn't make sense, so she looked through the data again to see where she'd **slipped up**.

slip up
make a mistake



Wang thought he'd bought everyone a drink until he noticed he'd **missed Ellie out**.

miss out
forget to include someone or something in an activity



When Juan missed the penalty, his teammates **rubbed it in** by laughing at him.

rub in
make someone feel worse about a mistake or failure



I was relying on Selma to bring candles for the cake, but she **let me down**.

let down
fail to meet someone's expectations or fail to keep a promise



The spelling mistake in Juanita's homework **jumped out at me**.

jump out at
be obvious to someone



I'll never **live down** the time I dropped Erin's birthday cake in the middle of her party.

live down
have people forget about an embarrassing mistake you made



Tariq **landed** himself **in** trouble when he forgot to do his homework.

land in
get into a bad situation



When Chris got home from work, he realized that he had **mixed** his bag **up with** Simon's.

mix up (with)
accidentally mistake one thing for something else



Enzo went back to the café when he realized he'd **left** his wallet **behind**.

leave behind
forget to take someone or something with you




I **crossed out** the misspelled word and wrote it again correctly.


cross out
draw a line or lines through a word







48.2 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A  Enzo went back to the café when he realized he'd left his wallet behind. ☐

B  Tariq landed himself in trouble when he forgot to do his homework. ☐

C  When Juan missed the penalty, his teammates rubbed it in by laughing at him. ☒

D  I crossed out the misspelled word and wrote it again correctly. ☐

E  The spelling mistake in Juanita's homework jumped out at me. ☐

Aa

48.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Jimish thought he'd bought everyone a drink until he noticed he'd **missed** Ellie **on**.

Jimish thought he'd bought everyone a drink until he noticed he'd missed Ellie out.

1 I was relying on Selma to bring candles for the cake, but she **letting** me **down**.

2 I'll never **die down** the time I dropped Erin's birthday cake in the middle of her party.

3 Coralie's graph didn't make sense, so she looked through the data again to see where she'd **slipping up**.

4 When Chris got home from work, he realized that he had **mixed** his bag **up for** Simon's.

5 The spelling mistake in Juanita's homework **pounced out at** me.

49 Accidents and damage

49.1 ACCIDENTS

Chrissy accidentally **broke** the handle **off** the antique vase.

break off
remove by force



The old book **came apart** in the librarian's hands.

come apart
fall to pieces



The dog **knocked over** the plant pot as it chased the cat.

knock over
hit something and make it fall to the ground



The hairdresser has completely **messed up** Kira's hair. She's furious about it.

mess up
make something untidy or unattractive,
do something incorrectly



I **banged into** the door while leaving the house.

bang into
hit someone or something by mistake



Takira **tripped over** one of her son's toys.

trip over
hit something with your foot and
fall to the ground as a result



49.3 PHRASAL VERBS WITH "FALL"

When Omar **fell over** in the backyard, his dad rushed over to help him.

fall over
fall to the ground from
a standing position



The old manor house Andrei wants to buy looks as if it's about to **fall down**.

fall down
be in a very bad state, fall to the ground (about a building)

Rodrigo slammed the door so hard that the pictures **fell off** the wall.

fall off
fall to the ground from
a higher point or surface



49.2 DAMAGE

When I got home, I found that the dog had **torn** a cushion **apart**.

tear apart
destroy by tearing into pieces



After her favorite band split up, Jo **tore up** all her posters of them.

tear up
break something into pieces by ripping it



Colin accidentally drove into a tree and **smashed up** his van.

smash up
break something into pieces



The drain was **clogged up** with old leaves, so I had to unblock it.

clog up
become blocked



My son has **worn out** another pair of shoes!

wear out
use something so much that it cannot be used anymore



Jorge **took** the old clock **apart** to fix it.

take apart
disassemble something, separate it into its parts



Sanjay's old car is **falling apart**. He's had it since he was a teenager.

fall apart
break into pieces (because of age or bad quality)



David's wallet **fell out of** his pocket while he was running for the bus.

fall out (of)
fall from an enclosed place



After the leak in the room above, it looked like the ceiling might **fall in**.

fall in
crumble and fall to the ground



Aa

49.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

My son has worn out another pair of shoes!



My son has worn off another pair of shoes!



1 After the leak in the room above, it looked like the ceiling might fall in.



After the leak in the room above, it looked like the ceiling might fall on.



2 The dog knocked out the plant pot as it chased the cat.



The dog knocked over the plant pot as it chased the cat.



3 Jorge took the old clock under to fix it.



Jorge took the old clock apart to fix it.



4 When I got home, I found that the dog had torn a cushion apart.



When I got home, I found that the dog had torn a cushion aside.

49.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN
NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE
ORDER YOU HEAR THEMA ☐B ☐C ☐D ☐E ☐F ☐

Aa

49.6 MATCH THE VERBS TO THE
CORRECT PARTICLES TO MAKE
PHRASAL VERBS

clog

out

1 smash

over

2 wear

up

3 bang

off

4 trip

up

5 fall

into

6 break

in

49.7 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL



David's wallet fell out of his pocket while he was running for the bus.



4 The old book _____ in the librarian's hands.



1 I _____ the door while leaving the house.



5 The drain was _____ with old leaves, so I had to unblock it.



2 Colin accidentally drove into a tree and _____ his van.



6 Sanjay's old car is _____. He's had it since he was a teenager.



3 Rodrigo slammed the door so hard that the pictures _____ the wall.



7 The old manor house Andrei wants to buy looks as if it's about to _____.

came apart

fall down

fell off

banged into

falling apart

~~fell out of~~

smashed up

clogged up

50 Problems and solutions

50.1 PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

Sorry, I'll be home late tonight.
Something's **come up**.

come up
happen unexpectedly



The proposals for a new highway have
come up against a lot of local opposition.

come up against
encounter difficulties



It was very hard for Somrita and her
friends to relax with their final
exams **hanging over** them.

hang over
be a source of worry



While climbing the mountain, we had to
contend with strong winds and heavy rain.

contend with
deal with difficulties
or opposition



A number of problems have **cropped up**
with the new printer. We need to get
someone to fix it.

crop up
happen (often unexpectedly)



Writing your thesis is easier if you **break**
it **down** into small sections.

break down
make something easier to understand
by separating it into smaller parts



I thought the event was going to be a
disaster, but it **turned out** alright.

turn out
happen differently than expected



Owen is great with customers. He
deals with their complaints fairly,
and never loses his temper.

deal with
manage or solve a problem



Ben and I **cleared up** our disagreement
when we realized it was all just
a misunderstanding.

clear up
solve a problem, resolve an argument



Bitna told Danny she was nervous about her
presentation, but he just **brushed it aside**.

brush aside
treat a problem as unimportant,
refuse to take it seriously



Clare and Wei Ting had to **sort out** a problem with their experiment.

sort out
find a solution to a problem



They stayed up late to **thrash** it out and find a solution.

thrash out
discuss a problem to find a solution

Sawad's computer crashed, but she **worked around** it by using pen and paper instead.

work around
avoid an obstacle that is stopping you from achieving something



Kavitha didn't know why her equation was wrong, so she **thought it through** carefully.

think through
consider something methodically



Anton had run out of green paint, but he managed to **get around** it.

get around
avoid or solve a problem or obstacle



It's taken me all evening to **figure out** how to turn on this new television.

figure out
find a solution to a problem



Femmy's thinking of moving to a new part of town, so she went to **check out** the area.

check out
find out if someone or something is acceptable



One of the pipes was leaking, so we **called in** a plumber to fix it.

call in
ask a skilled person to deal with a problem for you



Whenever Gitanjali has a problem, she **turns to** her grandmother for advice.

turn to
go to someone for help or advice





50.2 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



A ☐



B ☐



C ☐



D ☐



E ☐



F ☐



G ☐



H ☐

Aa

50.3 MATCH UP THE PAIRS OF SENTENCES THAT MEAN THE SAME THING

Clare and Wei Ting had to sort out a problem with their experiment.

While climbing the mountain, we had to deal with strong winds and heavy rain.

1 Whenever Gitanjali has a problem, she turns to her grandmother for advice.

Clare and Wei Ting had to find a solution to a problem with their experiment.

2 While climbing the mountain, we had to contend with strong winds and heavy rain.

It's taken me all evening to find out how to turn on this new television.

3 The proposals for a new highway have come up against a lot of local opposition.

One of the pipes was leaking, so we asked a plumber to fix it.

4 One of the pipes was leaking, so we called in a plumber to fix it.

Whenever Gitanjali has a problem, she goes to her grandmother for advice.

5 Writing your thesis is easier if you break it down into small sections.

The proposals for a new highway have encountered a lot of local opposition.

6 It's taken me all evening to figure out how to turn on this new television.

Writing your thesis is easier if you separate it into small sections.

Aa

50.4 WRITE THE PHRASAL VERBS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUP

SEPARABLE

INSEPARABLE

turn to

come up against

break down

crop up

thrash out

brush aside

get around

think through

~~turn to~~

Aa

50.5 WRITE THE PHRASAL VERBS FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

avoid or solve a problem or obstacle

get around☐ solve a problem, resolve an argument☐ happen differently than expected☐ treat a problem as unimportant, refuse to take it seriously☐ consider something methodically☐ ask a skilled person to deal with a problem for you☐ find a solution to a problem☐ find out if someone or something is acceptable

sort out

check out

think through

brush aside

turn out

~~get around~~

clear up

thrash out

51 Secrets and surprises

51.1 SECRETS

Jessica has been **keeping** the name of her new boyfriend **from** me.

keep from
not tell someone something



Paolo has prepared a new sculpture for the exhibition. I've asked him what it is, but he's not **giving** anything **away**!

give away
reveal a secret



I only **cottoned onto** the fact that Lisa and Pete were dating when I saw them at the ice rink together.

cotton on(to) (UK)
begin to understand or realize something



51.2 SURPRISES

We were all eating our dinner when the dog **burst into** the room.

burst in(to)
enter a room or building suddenly



Kamal was **blown away** by Jose's account of his adventures in the Amazon.

blow away
impress very strongly (informal)



I was **bowed over** when Nadia announced that she had been accepted into dance school.

bowl over
amaze or impress someone



Mollie **crept up on** her grandfather while he slept in the garden.

creep up on
approach someone quietly to surprise them



My best friend **sprang it on** me last night that she's moving to Canada.

spring on
announce something without warning



The surprising news was a lot to **take in**.

take in
understand or accept some news or information



See also:

blurt out 36 creep up on 15 give away 55
keep from 33 slip out 5 take in 6, 55

My little sister **blurted out** to Dad that we'd organized a surprise party for him. She can't keep a secret.

blurt out

say something suddenly, without thinking about it



I didn't mean to tell the team that it was your birthday. It just **slipped out**.

slip out

say something by mistake



The movie star tried to **hush up** the fact that she had a new boyfriend.

hush up

conceal the truth



Clara can't believe she passed her medical exams. It's going to take a while for it to **sink in**.

sink in

be fully understood



My daughter often pretends to be a dinosaur. We all have to **play along** with her.

play along

pretend something is true or that you believe in something



People have **woken up to** the fact that we need to look after the environment.

wake up to

realize the importance of something



While I was on vacation in Venice, I **bumped into** one of my cousins. I couldn't believe it.

bump into

meet someone without expecting it



I was shopping at the antiques market when I **stumbled upon** a valuable necklace.

stumble upon

find by chance



I was **taken aback** when Tia and Juan told me they were getting married.

take aback

surprise or shock someone



Aa

51.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

Kamal was blown away by Jose's

that it was your birthday. It just slipped out.

1 I didn't mean to tell the team

that she had been accepted into dance school.

2 The movie star tried to hush up

account of his adventures in the Amazon.

3 Jessica has been keeping

while he slept in the garden.

4 I was bowled over when Nadia announced

the fact that she had a new boyfriend.

5 Mollie crept up on her grandfather

the name of her new boyfriend from me.

Aa

51.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

We were all eating our dinner when the dog burst ~~onto~~ / ~~into~~ / ~~through~~ the room.

1

Clara can't believe she passed her exams. It's going to take a while for it to sink ~~down~~ / ~~of~~ / ~~in~~.

2

People have woken ~~for~~ / ~~up~~ / ~~of~~ to the fact that we need to look after the environment.

3

I was shopping at the antiques market when I stumbled ~~over~~ / ~~upon~~ / ~~in~~ a valuable necklace.

4

My best friend ~~sprang~~ / ~~jumped~~ / ~~splashed~~ it on me last night that she's moving to Canada.

5

I was taken ~~about~~ / ~~aback~~ / ~~around~~ when Tia and Juan told me they were getting married.



51.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MATCH THE IMAGES TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS



play along

cotton onto

bump into

blurt out

give away

Aa

51.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

surprising lot was The to take in. news a

The surprising news was a lot to take in.

a the stumbled valuable market. I necklace upon at antiques

1 _____

keeping Jessica the me. new has name boyfriend her been of from

2 _____

on grandfather crept her up in slept he the Mollie while garden.

3 _____

room. the We our were dinner burst into eating when dog the

4 _____

52.1 PHRASAL VERBS WITH "COME"

Hetty's career as a musician **came about** after a producer saw her performing.

come about
happen (often without planning)



When I tried to log into my account, a message **came up** saying that my account had been blocked.

come up
appear (on screen)



Staying in touch with friends became much easier once the internet **came along**.

come along
appear, become available,
start to exist



Ben and Eleanor **came out of** the toy store with presents for their grandchildren.

come out (of)
leave a room, building, or
enclosed space



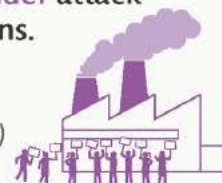
Natsuo **came across** the room to speak to us.

come across
move across a room, space,
country, etc.



The company has **come under** attack for its high carbon emissions.

come under
experience something negative
(such as criticism, threat, or attack)



Derek sat down in front of the TV when the ten o'clock news **came on**.

come on
start (about a TV program)



My daughter's still waiting for her results to **come through**. She's so nervous.

come through
arrive (about news or information)



No matter how much we clean it, this graffiti won't **come off** the wall.

come off
be removed



See also: come across 1, 39 come along 5, 31 come off 6, 26
 come on 27, 56 come out (of) 6 come up 16, 36, 50 do up 52
 make for 37 make out 41 make up 41, 44

52.2 PHRASAL VERBS WITH "MAKE"

Lots of talented people **make up** our circus's team of acrobats.

make up
 constitute, form something



Luanne struggled to **make out** what the train conductor was saying.

make out
 manage to see, hear, or understand



With hot weather expected, thousands of tourists **made for** the coast.

make for
 go toward a place



We were about to eat dinner when the dog **made off with** the leg of lamb.

make off with
 escape with something



When I asked Kim what she **made of** Toshi's new novel, she said she loved it.

make of
 have an opinion of something



52.3 PHRASAL VERBS WITH "DO"

Emily is **doing up** her house at the moment. It's going to look great when she's finished.

do up
 improve, renovate



The council needs to decide what it's going to **do about** the city's litter problem.

do about
 do something to solve a problem



With so many people using bank cards, we may be able to **do away with** cash in the future.

do away with
 abolish, no longer need or use



Riya was very disappointed with her wedding cake, and insisted it be **done over**.

do over (US)
 do something again









52.4 MATCH THE PHRASAL VERBS TO THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

	do up	be removed
1	come off	have an opinion of something
2	come up	improve, renovate
3	do about	appear (on screen)
4	make of	escape with something
5	make for	abolish, no longer need or use
6	make off with	go toward a place
7	do away with	do something to solve a problem



52.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A  Natsuo came across the room to speak to us. ☐
- B  We were about to eat dinner when the dog made off with the leg of lamb. ☐
- C  Ben and Eleanor came out of the toy store with presents for their grandchildren. ☒ 1
- D  My daughter's still waiting for her results to come through. She's so nervous. ☐
- E  When I asked Kim what she made of Toshi's new novel, she said she loved it. ☐
- F  Staying in touch with friends became much easier once the internet came along. ☐

Aa

52.6 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL

The company has come under attack for its high carbon emissions.

- 1 Riya was disappointed with her wedding cake, and insisted it be _____.
- 2 With hot weather expected, thousands of tourists _____ the coast.
- 3 Lots of talented people _____ our circus's team of acrobats.
- 4 Natsuo _____ the room to speak to us.
- 5 The council has to decide what it's going to _____ the litter problem.
- 6 Luanne struggled to _____ what the train conductor was saying.
- 7 No matter how much we clean it, this graffiti won't _____ the wall.

do about
came across
made for
come under
make out
make up
come off
done over

Aa

52.7 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING PHRASAL VERBS



Emily is doing up her house at the moment.
It's going to look great when she's finished.



- 1 Hetty's career as a musician _____ after a producer saw her performing.



- 2 Derek sat down in front of the TV when the ten o'clock news _____.



- 3 Luanne struggled to _____ what the train conductor was saying.



- 4 When I tried to log in, a message _____ saying that my account had been blocked.



- 5 Lots of talented people _____ our circus's team of acrobats.

53 "Get" and "set"

53.1 PHRASAL VERBS WITH "GET"

Claude **got up from** his chair and went to make some more tea.

get up (from)
stand up (from sitting)



It's almost eleven o'clock. We should **get down to** work.

get down to
start to focus on a task



Chad's oven had broken, but he **got around** it by using the microwave instead.

get around
avoid an obstacle, deal with a problem



Let's just clean the kitchen now and **get it over with**.

get over with
complete a task you don't want to do



Can you help me **get the shopping in**, please?

get in
bring something inside



Cheryl's dog keeps **getting over** the fence into the neighbor's backyard.

get over
find a way over an obstacle



53.2 PHRASAL VERBS WITH "SET"

Harry burned the dinner and **set off** the smoke detector.

set off
activate, cause something to start happening



As Martin walked home late at night, fear began to **set in**.

set in
begin (about something unpleasant that may last a long time)



The bad weather has **set us back** by two weeks. We won't finish building the bridge until November.

set back
cost time, money, or progress



See also: get around 35, 50 get down 19, 46 get in 8, 9
get out 9, 56 get over 32, 45 get to 46 get together 5
get up 8 set off 35, 46 set out 23, 35 set up 3, 12

Lee **got** his fishing rod **out of** the garage and carried it to his car.

get out (of)
remove something (from
a bag, box, room, etc.)



Glen climbed the ladder to **get** the cat **down from** the tree.

get down (from)
retrieve something from a higher position



As soon as we **got to** the ski resort, we went straight to the slopes.

get to
arrive at



Ramona always **gets** her message **across**, even when she's explaining complicated scientific theories.

get across
communicate a message successfully



Before accusing Simon, the police had to **get their facts together**.

get together
organize information or belongings



After Gia was rude to me, I **got back at** her by not inviting her to my wedding.

get back at
get revenge on somebody



Lee's speed **sets** him **apart from** the other players in the tournament.

set apart (from)
make someone or something
special in comparison to others



After leaving school, Romesh **set up** his own business selling surfboards.

set up
start (a business)



The security guard threatened to **set** his dog **on** us if we didn't leave immediately.

set on
order someone or something
to attack someone



Mary **set out** all her qualifications and experience in her resume.

set out
explain information in detail





53.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



Claude got up from his chair and went to make some more tea.

1



Cheryl's dog keeps _____ the fence into the neighbor's backyard.

2



Harry burned the dinner and _____ the smoke detector.

3



As Martin walked home late at night, fear began to _____.

4



It's almost eleven o'clock. We should _____ work.

5



Mary _____ all her qualifications and experience in her resume.

6



Lee's speed _____ the other players in the tournament.

Aa

53.4 WRITE THE PHRASAL VERBS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

SEPARABLE

INSEPARABLE

get around

get up (from)

set back

get to

set on

~~get around~~

get across

set in

get together

Aa

53.5 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS

avoid an obstacle, deal with a problem

get to

1 order someone or something to attack someone

get across

2 arrive at

get around

3 cost time, money, or progress

set on

4 get revenge on somebody

get together

5 communicate a message successfully

set back

6 organize information or belongings

set up

7 start (a business)

get back at

Aa

53.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Let's just clean the kitchen now and **set it over with**.Let's just clean the kitchen now and get it over with.1 Lee **got** his fishing rod **up of** the garage and carried it to his car.2 The security guard threatened to **get** his dog **on** us if we didn't leave immediately.3 Can you help me **got** the shopping **in**, please?4 Before accusing Simon, the police had to **get** their facts **up**.5 As soon as we **gotten to** the ski resort, we went straight to the slopes.

54.1 PHRASAL VERBS WITH "GO"

How are you going to **go about** fixing this car?

go about
start tackling a problem or task



As soon as I realized Orla had forgotten her bag, I **went after** her.

go after
follow or chase someone



James **went over** the company's accounts to check for mistakes.

go over
review



My daughter **goes to** ballet classes every Saturday morning.

go to
regularly attend



After I got back from the dentist, it took a couple of hours for the pain to **go away**.

go away
disappear



Michelle and I **go back** years. I've known her since kindergarten.

go back
know someone for a long time



Buying water in plastic bottles **goes against** my principles.

go against
be the opposite of what you wish or believe



The children watched the hot-air balloon slowly **go up** into the air.

go up
move from a lower position to a higher one



A team of firefighters **went into** the burning building.

go in(to)
enter a building, room, or enclosed space



As soon as the teacher had **gone out** of the room, the children began misbehaving.

go out (of)
leave a room, building, or enclosed space



See also:

go ahead 56 go around 32 go away 56 go back 16, 35 go by 15
go down 12, 32 go for 47 go out 3, 5, 27 go through 19

Help yourself to some cakes.
There are enough to **go around**.

go around
be enough for everyone



Malachai **went through** a period of unhappiness after his dog died.

go through
experience something



There's something **going on** next door.
I can hear loud music.

go on
happen



Parents often have to **go without** sleep when they have a new baby.

go without
live without something



Cath couldn't find the recipe, so she had to make it up as she **went along**.

go along
continue to do something



My new trainer is called Zachariah, though he usually **goes by** Zac.

go by
be called by a certain name



Kelly's decided to **go for** the job at the software company. It's very well paid.

go for
try to achieve something



All the money we make today will **go toward** funding the new school library.

go toward
contribute to



Rob and I sat on the beach watching the sun **go down**.

go down
move from a higher position to a lower one



Even though it was a cloudy day, Ramon decided to **go ahead with** the picnic.

go ahead (with)
decide to do something (after consideration or official approval)



54.2 MATCH UP THE PAIRS OF SENTENCES THAT MEAN THE SAME THING

As soon as the teacher had gone out of the room, the children began misbehaving.

After I got back from the dentist, it took a couple of hours for the pain to disappear.

1

My daughter goes to ballet classes every Saturday morning.

As soon as the teacher had left the room, the children began misbehaving.

2

There's something going on next door. I can hear loud music.

Help yourself to some cakes. There are enough for everyone.

3

James went over the company's accounts to check for mistakes.

My daughter attends ballet classes every Saturday morning.

4

Help yourself to some cakes. There are enough to go around.

Malachai experienced a period of unhappiness after his dog died.

5

Malachai went through a period of unhappiness after his dog died.

James reviewed the company's accounts to check for mistakes.

6

After I got back from the dentist, it took a couple of hours for the pain to go away.

There's something happening next door. I can hear loud music.



54.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A ☐B ☐ 1C ☐D ☐E ☐F ☐G ☐H ☐

54.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



How are you going to go about fixing this car?



How are you going to go above fixing this car?



1



Michelle and I go back years. I've known her since kindergarten.



Michelle and I go up years. I've known her since kindergarten.



2



My new trainer is called Zachariah, though he usually goes by Zac.



My new trainer is called Zachariah, though he usually went by Zac.



3



Buying water in plastic bottles goes against my principles.



Buying water in plastic bottles going against my principles.



4



As soon as I realized Orla had forgotten her bag, I went after her.



As soon as I realized Orla had forgotten her bag, I went before her.



5



The children watched the hot-air balloon slowly went up into the air.



The children watched the hot-air balloon slowly go up into the air.



54.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Cath couldn't find the recipe, so she had to make it up as she went ~~through~~ / ~~on~~ / along.

1 Parents often have to ~~leave~~ / go / arrive without sleep when they have a new baby.

2 Help yourself to some cakes. There are enough to go ~~among~~ / over / around.

3 Kelly's decided to go ~~for~~ / on / to the job at the software company. It's very well paid.

4 Rob and I sat on the beach watching the sun ~~set~~ / go / back down.

5 A team of firefighters went ~~onto~~ / down / into the burning building.

6 All the money we make today will go ~~forward~~ / toward / into funding the new school library.

7 Even though it was a cloudy day, Ramon decided to go ~~about~~ / ahead / around with the picnic.

55.1 PHRASAL VERBS WITH "PUT"

Liam finished decorating the cake and **put it on** a stand.

put on
place something onto a surface



The deliveryman **put** the parcel **down** before knocking on the door.

put down
place something you have been carrying on the ground or a surface



Angela is upset about her divorce, but she's trying to **put it behind** her.

put behind
forget about a bad experience



Can you please be quiet? You're **putting me off**!

put off
distract someone from focusing



The fitness instructor **put** the class **through** a tough training program.

put through
make someone experience something



Forecasters have **put out** a weather warning for heavy rain and strong winds.

put out
broadcast important information



Cassie followed the instructions carefully to **put** her new wardrobe **together**.

put together
build, assemble



Scarlett had to **put up with** busy trains every day on her way to work.

put up with
tolerate something unpleasant



55.3 PHRASAL VERBS WITH "GIVE"

Martha played the violin as a child, but **gave it up** when she left school.

give up
stop doing something



The café on the high street is **giving out** free samples of their new cakes.

give out
give something to people for free



See also: give away 51 give up 26 put off 23 put on 6, 27, 41
 put through 38 take away 25, 30 take back 10, 16, 44
 take in 6, 51 take off 5, 6, 9, 22 take up 15, 31

55.2 PHRASAL VERBS WITH "TAKE"

Jim's mother asked him to **take** his younger brother **along** to the skate park.

take along (to)

take someone or something with you



Amara **took** her mother **aside** to tell her that she was pregnant.

take aside

take someone to a quieter place
 to tell them something in private



The waste collectors came to **take away** the bags of trash.

take away

remove something



Denise **took** a jar **down from** the shelf to give her dog a biscuit.

take down (from)

get something from a higher place



Seeing the black clouds, Tim went outside to **take** the washing **in**.

take in

carry something inside



The police stopped the criminal and **took** the stolen money **off** him.

take off

remove something from someone



Eliza has really **taken to** golf. She never thought she'd like it.

take to

start to like



The elevator **took** James **up to** the top floor of the building.

take up (to)

take someone or something to a higher level



My son had been asking for an ice cream all day. I finally **gave in** and bought him one.

give in

agree to do something after
 some resistance



Tom's moving to a smaller apartment so he's **giving away** some of his belongings.

give away

give something to someone for
 free (rather than selling it)



Aa

55.4 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



The police stopped the criminal, and took the stolen money off him.



The elevator took James up to the top floor of the building.



Martha played the violin as a child, but gave it up when she left school.



Cassie followed the instructions carefully to put her new wardrobe together.



Liam finished decorating the cake and put it on a stand.



The waste collectors came to take away the bags of trash.

Aa

55.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Tom's moving to a smaller apartment so he's giving **away** / ~~over~~ / ~~through~~ some of his belongings.

1 The café on the high street is **taking** / **putting** / **giving** out samples of their new range of cookies.

2 Denise **got** / **took** / **put** a jar down from the shelf to give her dog a biscuit.

3 Angela is upset about her divorce, but she's trying to **put** / **take** / **give** it behind her.

4 Seeing the black clouds, Tim went outside to take the washing **on** / **off** / **in**.

5 My son had been asking for an ice cream all day. I finally **took** / **gave** / **put** in and bought him one.

- | | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|--|
| | The deliveryman put the parcel | out free samples of their new cakes. |
| 1 | The fitness instructor put the class | busy trains every day on her way to work. |
| 2 | Scarlett had to put up with | down before knocking on the door. |
| 3 | Angela is upset about her divorce, | to tell her that she was pregnant. |
| 4 | Amara took her mother aside | She never thought she'd like it. |
| 5 | The café on the high street is giving | his younger brother along to the skate park. |
| 6 | Eliza has really taken to golf. | but she's trying to put it behind her. |
| 7 | Jim's mother asked him to take | through a tough training program. |



*Can you please be quiet?
You're putting me off!*

1 _____

2 _____



3 _____



4 _____



5 _____

See also:

come in 4 come on 27, 52 get out 9, 53
go ahead 54 go away 54

56.1 EXCLAMATIONS

Go away!go away
tell someone or something to
leave you alone**Come on!**come on
tell someone or something to
follow you or to move faster**Get out!**get out
tell someone to leave a room
in an angry way**Look out!**look out
warn someone about something
they haven't noticed yet**Are you ready to start?****Yes, bring it on!**bring it on
said when you're confident and
ready to start doing something**Hey Vi, can I ask you something?****Sure, fire away.**fire away
let someone know it is fine
for them to start talking**I think I've just won the lottery!****Come off it!**come off it
said to express disbelief at
something someone has said**Hi Carolina! Come in.**come in
said when inviting someone
into a room or building
(especially your own home)**Do you mind if I sit here?****Go ahead.**go ahead
said when giving someone permission
to do something



56.2 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MATCH THE IMAGES TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS

1

2

3

4

come in

get out

fire away

go ahead

bring it on

Aa

56.3 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

said to express disbelief at something someone has said = come off it

☐ tell someone or something to leave you alone = _____

☐ warn someone about something they haven't noticed yet = _____

☐ said when giving someone permission to do something = _____

☐ let someone know it is fine for them to start talking = _____

☐ said when you're confident and ready to start doing something = _____

☐ tell someone to leave a room in an angry way = _____

☐ tell someone or something to follow you or to move faster = _____

☐ said when inviting someone into a room or building = _____

go ahead

come on

look out

come in

go away

get out

~~come off it~~

bring it on

fire away

R Reference

R1 VERBS AND PARTICLES

A single verb can be followed by different particles or prepositions, which can change the meaning of the verb. In each of these sentences, "break" carries a sense of separation or damage, but the particles change the meaning into something different each time.

Maria and Pablo broke up.

Maria and Pablo ended their relationship.



My car broke down.

My car stopped working.



The handle broke off the vase.

The handle separated from the vase.



Ted broke down and started to cry.

Ted became very emotional and started to cry.



A thief broke into my house.

A thief entered my house illegally.



Gustav broke out of prison.

Gustav escaped from prison.

↑
"Break into" and "break out of"
have opposite meanings.

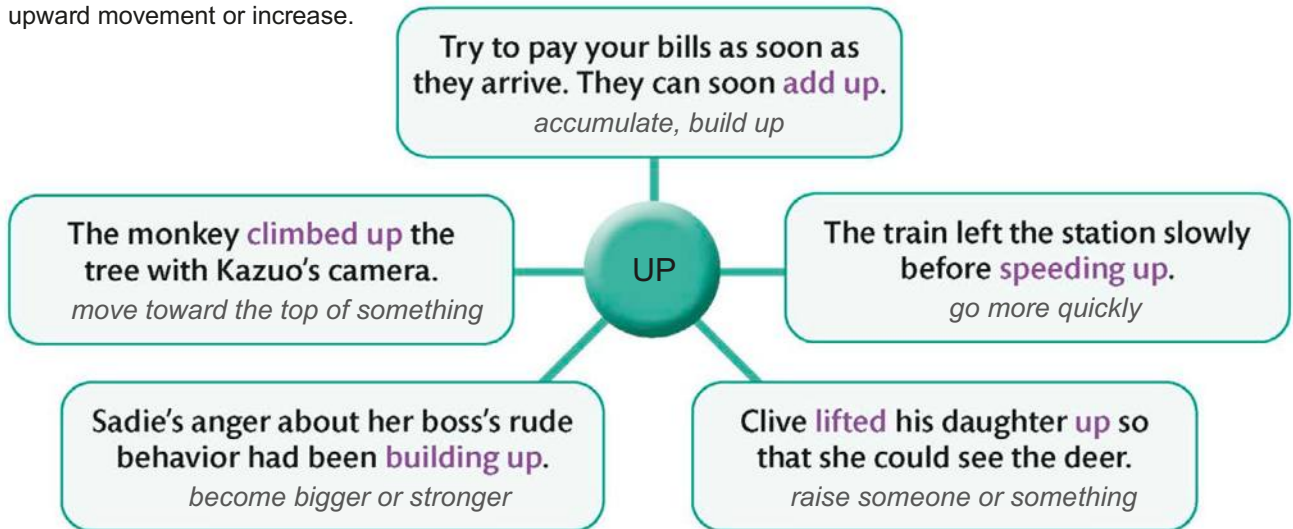


R2 COMMON PARTICLES

Phrasal verb particles often bestow a similar meaning or range of meanings no matter which verb they are used with.

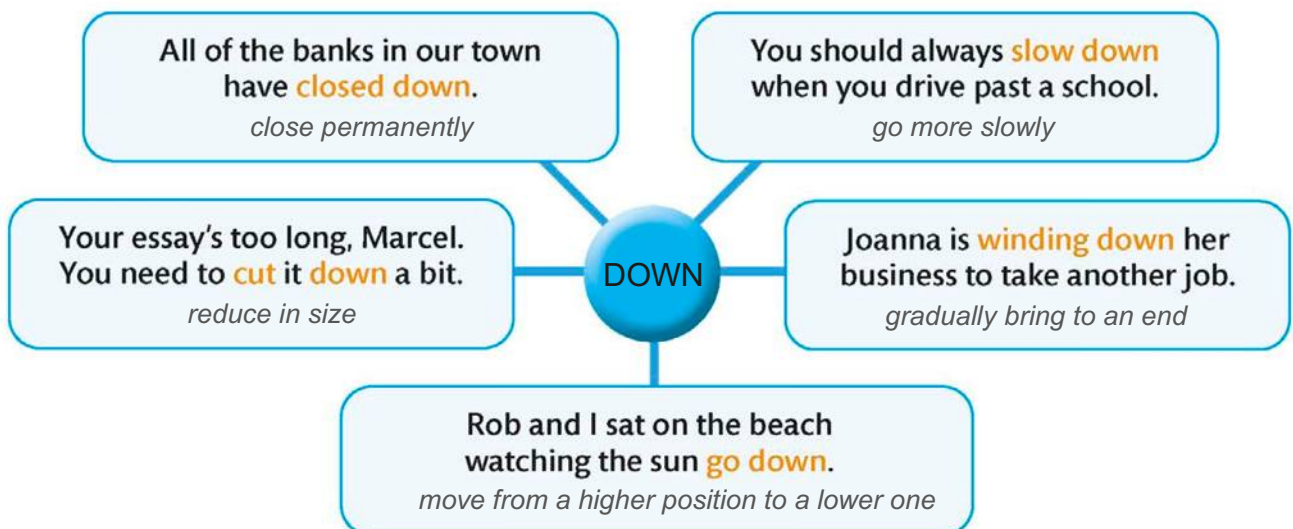
PHRASAL VERBS WITH “UP”

The particle “up” often gives a phrasal verb a meaning of upward movement or increase.



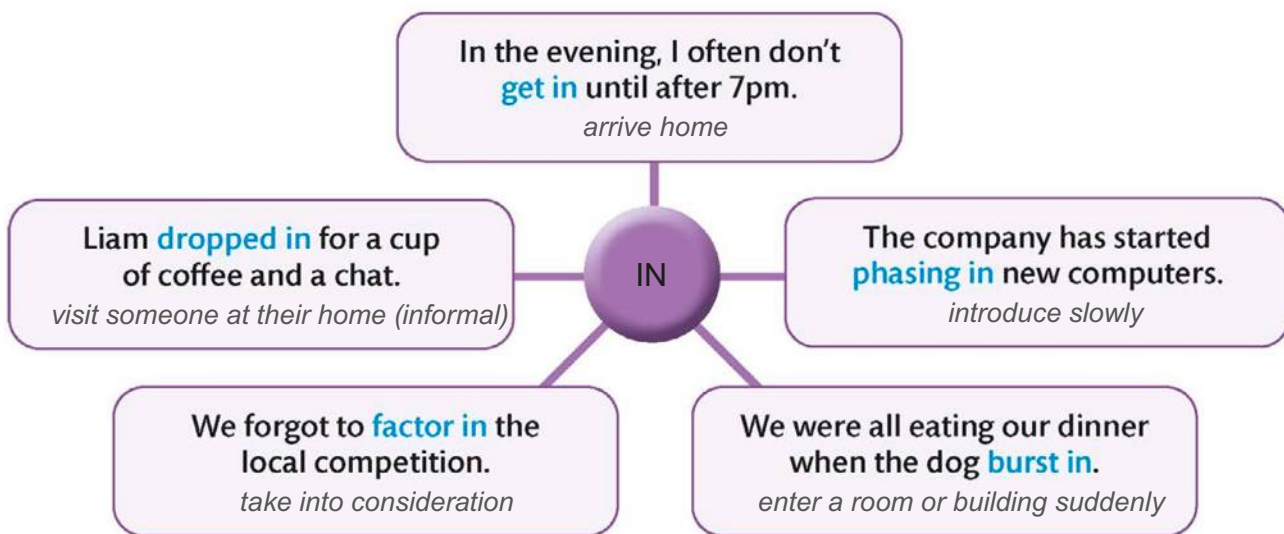
PHRASAL VERBS WITH “DOWN”

The particle “down” often gives a phrasal verb a meaning of downward movement, reduction, or action coming to a stop.



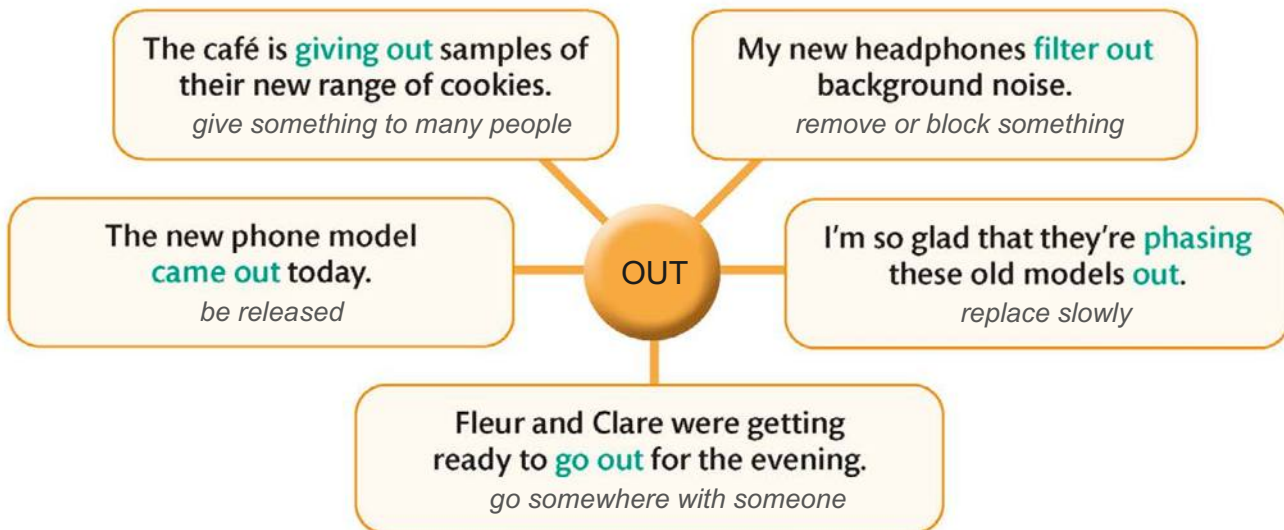
PHRASAL VERBS WITH “IN”

The particle “in” often gives a phrasal verb a meaning of entering or becoming part of something.



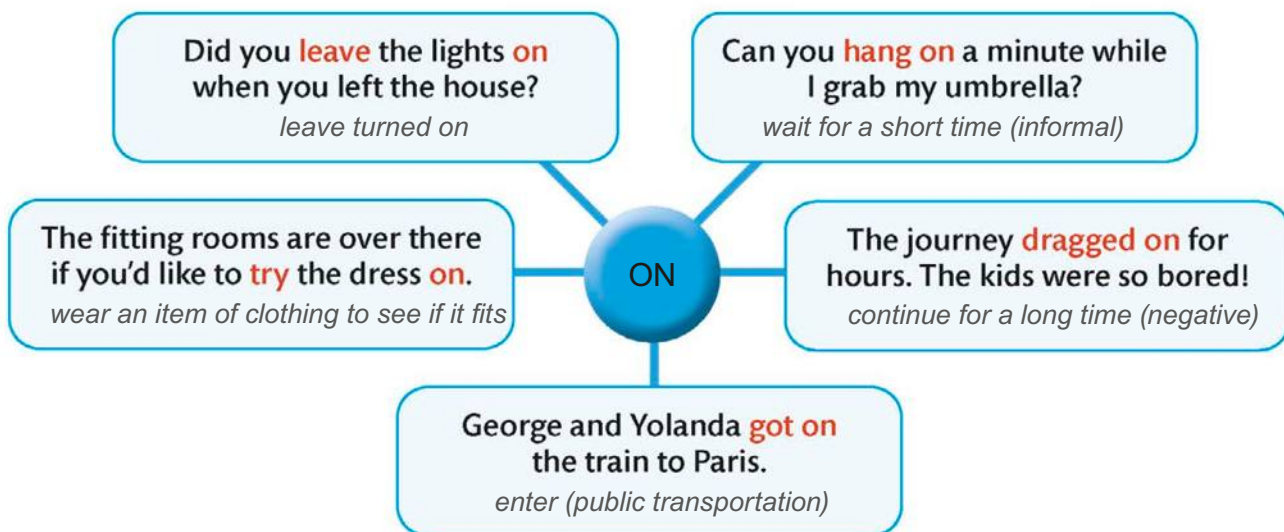
PHRASAL VERBS WITH “OUT”

The particle “out” often gives a phrasal verb a meaning of leaving, being released, or being removed.



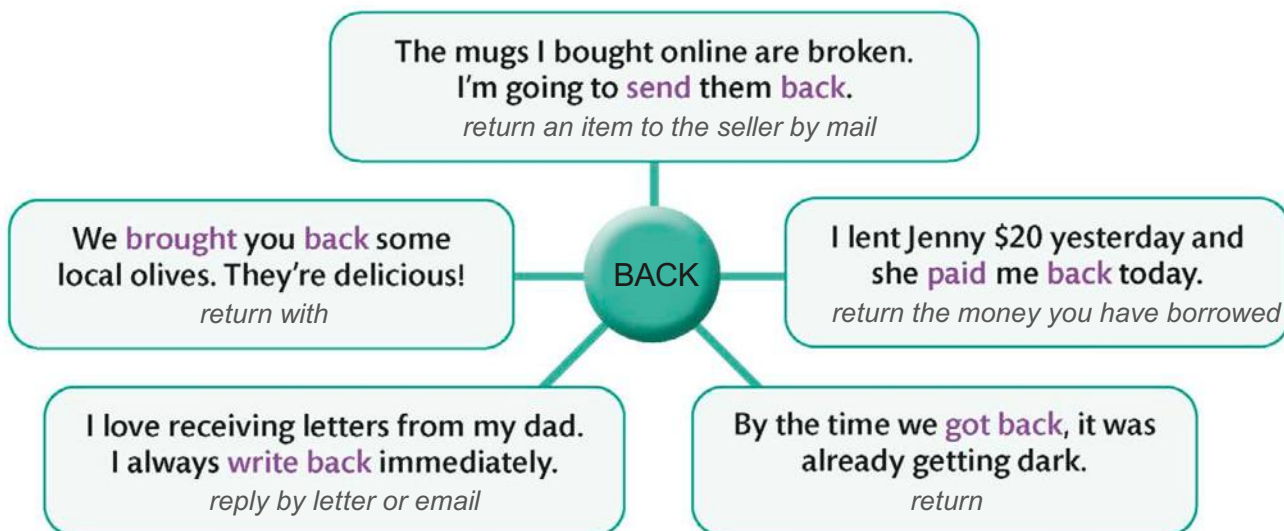
PHRASAL VERBS WITH “ON”

The particle “on” often gives a phrasal verb a meaning of continuation or physically being on something.



PHRASAL VERBS WITH “BACK”

The particle “back” often gives a phrasal verb a meaning of returning or doing something again.



R3 COMMON SEPARABLE PHRASAL VERBS

Some phrasal verbs can be separated by the object of the verb (see page 14). In these cases, the verb is first, then the object, then the particle. This separation can often be optional, unless the object of a separable phrasal verb is a pronoun, in which case it must go between the verb and the particle.

PHRASAL VERB	DEFINITION	SAMPLE SENTENCE
bring around	persuade someone to support your idea	Al's speech brought many people around to her ideas.
call off	cancel an event	Our manager was busy, so she called our meeting off .
chop up	cut into small pieces	Chop the onions up and then fry them for 10 minutes.
clean up	make tidy again	Can you help me clean the kitchen up please?
cross out	draw a line or lines through a word	I crossed out the wrong word and wrote the right one.
give away	give something to someone for free	Tom is giving some of his furniture away .
give up	stop doing something	Martha used to play the violin, but she gave it up .
hand out	distribute	The teacher handed some worksheets out .
leave out	exclude, not include	To make this recipe vegetarian, leave the meat out .
let in	allow to enter	I let the cat in when it started to rain.
let out	allow to leave	I let the cat out every morning after I've woken up.
make up	invent a story to explain something	I don't believe Gio's story, I think he made it up .
miss out	forget to include someone or something	I thought I'd counted everyone, but I missed you out .
push back	postpone	Claude is unwell, so needs to push our meeting back .
put back	return an object to its original place	Paul and Sally put their furniture back in its place.
put in	place inside	Lisa puts her rabbit in its cage each evening.
put on	place something onto a surface	Liam put the cake on a stand.
take out	take someone on a date	Phil took me out to an expensive restaurant.
take out on	behave in a bad way to someone	Stop taking it out on me. It's not my fault!
throw away	discard, put in the trash	If the chicken smells bad, you should throw it away .
throw on	put a piece of clothing on quickly	Tom threw a jacket on and ran for the bus.
try out	try a new product to see what it is like	Marta couldn't wait to try her new games console out .
turn on	make something start working	If you're bored, turn the television on .
write down	record information by writing it	I wrote a few ideas down before starting my essay.

R4 COMMON INSEPARABLE PHRASAL VERBS

Some phrasal verbs cannot be separated (see page 15). Their object always comes after them, even if it is a pronoun.

PHRASAL VERB	DEFINITION	SAMPLE SENTENCE
carry on	continue doing something	The children carried on misbehaving.
catch up with	talk to friends who have not talked to recently	I caught up with some friends yesterday.
come across	find something by chance	I came across some old photographs while cleaning up.
cut back on	reduce the amount of money you spend	The government wants to cut back on spending.
deal with	manage or solve a problem	We learned how to deal with difficult customers.
get at	imply, try to say something indirectly	Sorry, I'm not sure what you're getting at .
get off	exit (public transportation)	George and Yolanda got on the train to Paris.
get on	enter (public transportation)	Gine got off the bus when it arrived at her stop.
get on with	concentrate on doing something	I need to get on with my homework.
get out of	exit (a car or taxi)	Be careful when you get out of the car.
get over	recover, feel well again	It took me a long time to get over the last cold I had.
go over	review	Remember to go over your answers carefully.
go with	look good with another piece of clothing	Does this scarf go with my jacket?
hear from	receive news from	Have you heard from your cousins recently?
keep up with	run at the same speed	Slow down! I can't keep up with you!
live up to	be as good as people had hoped	The movie really lived up to everyone's expectations.
look after	care for, take responsibility for	My mother looks after my children when I'm at work.
look for	search for something	Peter is going to look for a job when he leaves school.
look forward to	wait for something with excitement	George was looking forward to going to the beach.
look up to	admire someone	Lots of young people look up to sports stars.
pull through	survive a serious illness or operation	It was a risky operation, but Josh pulled through .
run out of	not have any more of something	We've run out of food. Let's go to the store.
turn up	be found (usually by accident)	I lost my passport, but I'm sure it'll turn up soon.
weigh in on	add your opinion to an ongoing discussion	The professor weighed in on the political debate.

R5 COMMON PHRASAL NOUNS

Some nouns are based on phrasal verbs (see page 16). They are often either combined into one word or joined by a hyphen.

PHRASAL NOUN	DEFINITION	SAMPLE SENTENCE
breakdown	when something (e.g. a vehicle) stops working	A breakdown on the highway caused heavy traffic.
break-in	the act of entering a building illegally	There's been a break-in at the local bank.
breakup	the end of a romantic relationship	After their breakup , John and Helen stayed friends.
checkout	the place in a store where you go to pay	Jenny went to the checkout to pay for her groceries.
checkup	an evaluation (especially for your health)	Terry went to the dentist for a checkup .
cover-up	the act of hiding information from people	A newspaper exposed the company's cover-up .
crackdown	the act of strictly enforcing a law	There's been a crackdown on littering in the town.
falling-out	an argument or disagreement	Idris and Giovanni had a falling-out .
getaway	a vacation	Ellen and Piers went to Mexico for a short getaway .
get-together	a social gathering	I'm having a get-together for my 30th birthday.
giveaway	an event where free items are distributed	The bakery did a giveaway to attract more customers.
go-ahead	permission to do something	My manager gave me the go-ahead to leave early.
input	a contribution of information or an opinion	I asked for my teacher's input on my essay.
intake	the amount of something that is taken in	You should limit your daily intake of sugar.
kickoff	the start of a sport match (e.g. soccer)	Liverpool are playing soccer tonight. Kickoff 's at 7pm.
letdown	a disappointment	I thought I'd like that movie, but it was a real letdown .
mix-up	when things are mistaken for each other	This isn't what I ordered. There's been a mix-up .
outset	the beginning	Harry has worked hard from the outset .
printout	a physical copy of an electronic document	Jim gave everyone a printout of the presentation.
setback	a hinderance or delay	There were a lot of setbacks during the project.
sleepover	when you sleep at someone else's house	Phoebe went for a sleepover at Eliza's house.
stopover	a stop somewhere on your way elsewhere	Our flight to Los Angeles had a stopover in New York.
takeout (US) / takeaway (UK)	food that you buy and take elsewhere (especially your own home) to eat	I don't want to cook. Let's order some takeout instead.
workout	a period of exercise	Dimitri was exhausted after his workout .

R6 COMMON PHRASAL ADJECTIVES

Some adjectives are based on phrasal verbs (see page 17). They are often either combined into one word or joined by a hyphen.

PHRASAL ADJECTIVE	DEFINITION	SAMPLE SENTENCE
backup	supporting or alternative	I always make a backup copy of all my files.
beaten-up	old and in a bad state	Ken's finally getting rid of his old, beaten-up car.
broken-down	(usually about a vehicle) no longer working	A broken-down truck caused delays on the highway.
bygone	of the distant past	These old photographs are from a bygone era.
drawn-out	lasting a very long time (negative)	Buying a house can be a stressful, drawn-out process.
follow-up	following	My doctor and I scheduled a follow-up appointment.
getaway	used to escape	The thieves escaped in a getaway car.
incoming	arriving	Everyone rushed to prepare for the incoming storm.
knockdown	lower than usual or before	Kemal sold some of his jewelry at a knockdown price.
leftover	remaining after the rest has been used	There's some leftover chicken in the fridge.
made-up	invented, not true	Wayne is always telling his friends made-up stories.
off-putting	unattractive, unappealing	I found the violence in the movie very off-putting .
ongoing	in progress	There's an ongoing investigation into their finances.
outdated	out of date, old-fashioned	I'm replacing my outdated computer with a new one.
outgoing	sociable, extroverted	Kerry is a very friendly and outgoing person.
outspoken	opinionated, vocal about your opinions	My dad is very outspoken about environmental issues.
outstanding	excellent	Chris's professor told him his essay was outstanding .
outstretched	stretched out as far as possible	Finn approached me with his arms outstretched .
run-down	in a poor condition	Paolo is renovating an old, run-down house.
stressed-out	anxious about something	Somrita is stressed-out with work at the moment.
tired out	exhausted	Vi is feeling tired out after a long day at work.
upcoming	taking place in the near future	The country is preparing for the upcoming election.
uplifting	inspiring, cheerful	Jo was feeling sad, so she watched an uplifting movie.
worn-out	exhausted, extremely tired	Gerry was completely worn-out after his run.

Answers

01

1.3

- 1 People left the stadium in large numbers.
- 2 He has been flattering him for a favor.
- 3 They think they are better than her.
- 4 I found the portrait by chance.

1.4

- 1 Jordan's aunts fuss over him when they visit.
- 2 I found it hard to fit in with the art class.
- 3 Nuwa gathered up the plates from the table.
- 4 Sandra was asking after you at the park.

1.5

- 1 Some of the older children have been **ganging up** on me and calling me names.
- 2 Ava lost her passport ages ago. It turned up when she was cleaning the living room.
- 3 Adi has got a temper. He **turned on** me the instant I suggested he buy a new suit.
- 4 Mel lent Dave her lawnmower a month ago, and she finally got it **back** from him.

1.6

- 1 turn up 2 watch over 3 turn on
- 4 wear down 5 pack into

1.7

- 1 Some of the older children have been **ganging up** on me and calling me names.
- 2 Mel lent Dave her lawnmower a month ago, and she finally **got it back** from him.
- 3 I got my son a puppy. After asking me for months, he finally **wore me down**!
- 4 Hundreds of people **packed into** the town hall to watch the debate.
- 5 Barney really **looks up to** his grandfather. He loves listening to his stories.

02

2.3

- 1 I let the cat in when it started to rain.
- 2 Olly's dog ran away last week while they were at the park.
- 3 My mother looks after my children while I'm at work.

2.4

- 1 After a few days, Olly's dog came back all by herself.
- 2 Jasmine takes after her mother. They're very similar people.
- 3 I let the cat out every morning after I've woken up.
- 4 Albert's parents named him after his great-grandfather.
- 5 After traveling for a few years, Bill settled down and bought a house.
- 6 Colin lives with his son in a house at the edge of town.

2.5

- 1 Lisa puts her rabbit in its cage each evening before bed.
- 2 Will and Joe are identical twins. It's almost impossible to tell them **apart**.
- 3 After traveling for a few years, Bill settled **down** and bought a house next door to his parents.
- 4 Liam gets **on** very well with his elder sister. They're always laughing together.
- 5 Fiona's cat doesn't like strangers, but he's warming to Dan.
- 6 Jenny's grown **out** of her old toys, she prefers playing video games now.

2.6

- 1 Will and Joe are identical twins. It's almost impossible to tell them **apart**.
- 2 Lisa **puts** her rabbit in its cage each evening before bed.
- 3 Jasmine **takes after** her mother. They're very similar people.
- 4 I let the cat **out** every morning after I've woken up.
- 5 Jenny's **grown out of** her old toys, she prefers playing video games now.

03

3.3

- A 3 B 2 C 1 D 5 E 4 F 6

3.4

- 1 My brother **set me up** with a woman who works at his office.
- 2 Jack and Ula **really care for** each other. They've been together for 50 years.
- 3 They started **going out with** each other when they were at school.
- 4 Misha **stood by** Colin when he decided to quit college.

3.5

- 1 go off 2 bring together 3 fizzle out
- 4 set up 5 drift apart 6 finish with
- 7 care for

3.6

- 1 My best friends and I have **stuck together** since high school.
- 2 For our first date, Phil **took me out** to an expensive restaurant.
- 3 Bernadette **confided in** Martha that she was in love with Pavel.
- 4 Luisa has **finished with** Ben. He's very upset.
- 5 Ken **stuck by** Cath when her restaurant went bankrupt.

04

4.3

- 1 show around 2 invite along 3 show out
- 4 snoop around 5 stay over

4.4

- 1 He arrived at 6am.
- 2 They gave me a tour.
- 3 They brought their kids with them.
- 4 We'd like you to come to our home.
- 5 He visited me at my home.

4.5

- 1 On her way home from the gym, Miriam **stopped off at the supermarket**.
- 2 My father came into the house and **took off his coat**.
- 3 Omar told us to come over **any time after 2pm**.
- 4 After chatting on the doorstep, Malik **invited me in**.
- 5 We ended up staying over **at Beth and Omar's house**.
- 6 While everyone was in the garden, I **found Klaus snooping around inside**.

4.6

- 1 My new neighbors, Kaito and Leiko, **had me over** for dinner last night.
- 2 We chatted for hours, and he suggested I **stick around** for dinner.
- 3 On our way home from the beach, we **called in** to see Grandma.
- 4 Omar told us to **come over** any time after 2pm.
- 5 While you're in town, try to **swing by**. It would be good to see you.

5.3

- Amara let her little sister tag **along** when she went to the ice rink.
- Ella likes to get **together** with her friends at the ice cream parlor.
- I hate to tear you **away**, but we're going to miss the last train.
- Katie asked Lisa if she wanted to come **out** to play.
- Joe suddenly took **off** without saying where he was going.

5.4

- Charlie stormed **out of** the store when the manager refused to give him a refund.
- As I was leaving for the art exhibition, I asked Joe if he wanted to come **along**.
- Lots of guests were milling **around**, waiting for Raj to make his speech.
- Vincent and Maya decided to stay **in**. They ordered pizza and watched a movie.
- We headed **off to** the beach early because we wanted to avoid the crowds.
- Once a year, my school friends and I go out for a meal together to catch **up**.

5.5

- shoot off
- mill around
- liven up
- stay out

5.6

- Nadiya had to **dash off to pick up** the kids from school.
- The carnival was amazing. **We stayed out until dawn**.
- Fleur and Clare were getting **ready to go out** for the evening.
- Our local hotel has a large room that it **hires out for** parties.

6.2

- All the children at the party had dressed up as dinosaurs.
- Maurice hung up his coat as he walked in.
- Angelica helped her son to button up his shirt as he got ready for school.
- I hope this juice stain comes out when I wash my shirt.

6.3

- Marlon zipped up his leather jacket and walked toward the door.
- Gemma's shoes go really well with that dress.
- Arnie's so proud of his new jacket. He's been showing it off to everyone.
- Zane folded up his clothes and put them in the wardrobe.

6.4

A 3 B 6 C 1 D 4 E 7 F 2 G 5

6.5

- Mirek **did up** his coat to keep out the icy breeze.
- Kelly stopped to **tie up** one of her shoe laces.
- The sun is really strong today, so make sure you **cover up**.
- Gio's **grown out of** his sweater, so he's going to give it to his little brother.
- Alex **put on** her prettiest dress to go out for her wedding anniversary.

7.3

- Heavy traffic has had a strong effect on the city's air quality.
- Old cell phones aren't as good as today's smartphones.
- Due to her injury, Colleen had to accept the fact that she couldn't play in the match.
- To get into college, you'll need to get better results than you got last year.

7.4

- Sanjay got 100% on his exam. He more than **measured up to** his parents' expectations.
- The new action movie really **lived up to** the crowd's expectations.
- The discovery of some ancient ruins has **led to** an increase in tourism.
- The invention of the computer **brought about** the end of the typewriter.
- The heavy rain **resulted in** floods throughout the city.

8.5

- not wake up when your alarm rings
- go to bed
- go to bed later than usual

- take a lying position
- do small tasks in a relaxed way
- make yourself look clean and tidy
- get out of bed

8.6

- sleep over
- sleep in
- get in
- get up
- go off

8.7

- wake up
- head off (to)
- doze off
- sit down
- set about

8.8

- After a short break, Ramone **got on with** cleaning the bathroom.
- Martina **stayed up late** studying for her exam the following morning.
- I tried to wake Mia when I saw she had **dozed off at** her desk.
- Quite a few people **nodded off during** the speech.

9.3

- I got lost driving to your house. I had to pull over and ask for directions.
- Tanya turned off the main road and drove along the track to the beach.
- The helicopter took off from the top of the skyscraper.
- Gina got off the bus when it arrived at her stop.
- The train left the station slowly, before speeding up as it headed to the coast.

9.4

- Jen turned **back** when she realized that she had forgotten her phone.
- I pulled **up** by the train station to let my daughter out.
- Sally picked her friends **up** outside the movie theater at 9pm.
- When you reach the castle, turn **onto** the highway and head west.
- Jamie dropped me **off** at the train station on his way to work.
- Angelo left his house and got **into** the taxi.
- Marion didn't notice the motorcycle as she pulled **out of** the junction.

9.5

- 1 As the movie star **got out of** the limousine, photographers surrounded him.
- 2 We **pulled in** at a small roadside café, where we could have some breakfast.
- 3 The plane **touched down** in Dubai at 9pm in the evening.
- 4 You should always **slow down** when you drive past a school.
- 5 Clive tried to restart the motorboat's engine after it **cut out** without any warning.

9.6

- 1 get on 2 slow down 3 break down
- 4 drive off 5 turn onto

10

10.2

- 1 The fitting rooms are over there if you'd like to wear the clothes to see if they fit.
- 2 The mugs I bought online are broken. I'm going to return them to the seller by mail.
- 3 I bought my new laptop online, and went to collect it from my local store.
- 4 Before buying a new car, it's worth visiting several stores to compare prices.
- 5 I went to the market to buy some bread, but all the bread had been sold.

10.3

- 1 line up 2 stock up (on) 3 cross off
- 4 sell out (of) 5 snap up

10.4

- 1 Marta couldn't wait to **try out** her new games console.
- 2 Kemal **knocked down** the price of jewelry by 15% to attract shoppers to his new store.
- 3 Luis put the melon in his basket and **checked it off** his shopping list.
- 4 Aisha decided to **splash out** on clothes for her summer vacation.
- 5 Ellie used her credit card to **pay for** the scarf.

10.5

- 1 Aziz had been looking **around** the store for ages, but couldn't find a shirt he liked.
- 2 Shoppers had already **snapped up** all the bargains at the sale by the time I'd arrived.
- 3 Once Ellie had found a scarf that she liked, she went to **check out**.
- 4 Carla didn't like the sweater she'd bought, so she decided to take it **back**.
- 5 Joshua **crossed off** each item on the shopping list as he found it.

11

11.2

- 1 Today started off nicely, so we ate our breakfast on the terrace.
- 2 After days of bad weather, the rain finally started to let up.
- 3 Chris and Mel had to leave the beach when it started bucketing down.
- 4 The weather's been awful, but it's finally starting to brighten up.

11.3

- 1 Minutes after Ben had lit the grill, the sky clouded over.
- 2 People go ice-skating when the lake freezes over in the winter.
- 3 The wind's picking up. It's perfect weather for flying a kite.
- 4 Alice likes to sit on the balcony when the weather cools down in the evening.

11.4

- 1 As soon as the storm had **blown over**, the hikers left the cave and continued walking.
- 2 As dark storm clouds **rolled in** from the east, Arthur tried to get home before the rain started.
- 3 It looks like the weather's **clearing up**. We'll be able to start the game again soon.
- 4 By the end of May, the weather starts to **warm up** and the tourists start to arrive.
- 5 Once the storm had **calmed down**, Grace checked her house for damage.

11.5

- A 4 B 1 C 7 D 2 E 6 F 3 G 8 H 5

12

12.4

- A 5 B 1 C 7 D 4 E 2 F 6 G 3

12.5

- 1 When Amy zoomed in, she noticed the red car in front of the restaurant.
- 2 Some criminals hacked into our computer system and stole the new designs.
- 3 Pete scrolled up to the top of the document to find the company's address.

12.6

- 1 You should **shut down** your computer at night to save electricity.

- 2 Click on the link at the bottom of the page to see the answers.

- 3 I **back up** all my photos in case my computer breaks.
- 4 Always make sure you **log out** of your account after using it.
- 5 The company has started **phasing in** new computers. They look great!

12.7

- 1 I **type out** my essays because it's quicker than writing them by hand.
- 2 I **printed out** a copy of the contract for the clients to sign.
- 3 Our company hired a technician to **set up** the new printer.
- 4 You have to **type in** your password to access the website.
- 5 Amy **zoomed out** to look at the whole picture at once.

13

13.3

- 1 One of my old school friends is a candidate for mayor.
- 2 The police stopped people from entering the area where the crime had taken place.
- 3 After robbing the store, the thieves escaped in a stolen car.
- 4 Be aware of pickpockets when you're on the train!
- 5 The police are becoming stricter on illegal parking in the city.
- 6 Activists are asking the government publicly to protect the country's forests.

13.4

- A 7 B 1 C 4 D 2 E 6 F 3 G 5 H 8

13.5

- 1 The police ordered the criminal to hand over the stolen money.
- 2 Senators voted on the new law after a long debate.
- 3 Janice is leading a campaign to stamp out littering in the park.
- 4 While I was driving home, the traffic police pulled me over for speeding.
- 5 Dan tipped off the police about the location of the stolen artworks.

13.6

- 1 vote for 2 turn to 3 track down
- 4 beat up 5 bring in 6 call for

14

14.2

- 1 The company reduced in value.
- 2 Tommy had to spend a lot of money.
- 3 I inherited a lot of money.
- 4 Patrick put money into a bank
- 5 We paid Wayne what we owed him.

14.3

- 1 pay up
- 2 wipe off
- 3 run up
- 4 chip in
- 5 live on
- 6 save up

14.4

- 1 Sara has finally **coughed up** the money I lent her last year.
- 2 I've decided to **cut back on** spending by bringing my own lunch to work.
- 3 The food was excellent, but we were shocked when the bill **came to** more than \$200.
- 4 The cost of the new stadium has already **run into** the millions.
- 5 Try to pay your bills as soon as they arrive. They can soon **add up**.

14.5

- 1 The cost of the new stadium has already run into the millions.
- 2 The food was excellent, but we were shocked when the bill came to more than \$200.
- 3 Tara and Ali are saving up for a new house. They try to save \$300 each month.
- 4 Tommy had to fork out more than \$600 to get his car repaired.
- 5 Pete went to the ATM to take out some cash.

15

15.3

- 1 Move more quickly, Oliver.
- 2 I have more time for my studies.
- 3 I began to love Phil.
- 4 He makes lectures last longer.
- 5 I like to pass the time by reading.
- 6 He had no more time.
- 7 Your session has ended due to inactivity.

15.4

- 1 drag out
- 2 hurry up
- 3 wait for
- 4 break up
- 5 while away

15.5

- 1 The journey **dragged on** for hours. The kids were so bored.
- 2 Commuting to and from work really **eats into** my time.
- 3 Cleaning the house **took up** all of Liam's weekend.
- 4 The deadline for the project **crept up on** us.

15.6

- 1 The service here is terrible! It's **holding everyone up**.
- 2 Time's **getting on now**. Let's hurry home before it gets dark.
- 3 Can you **hang on a minute** while I grab my umbrella?
- 4 The doctor's busy today, but I'll try to **fit you in** tomorrow.

16

16.4

- A 6 B 1 C 4 D 2 E 7 F 5 G 3 H 8

16.5

- 1 In my country, the clocks go **forward** by one hour in the spring.
- 2 The clocks go **back** by one hour in the fall.
- 3 Elly and George are looking **forward to** going to the beach later.
- 4 Claude is unwell today. We'll have to push our meeting **back to** tomorrow.
- 5 Finding my old toys brought **back** happy memories of my childhood.
- 6 The building project has just begun. Months of construction work **lie ahead**.
- 7 We are planning to turn the store **back into** a house and live there.
- 8 All the streets were decorated in the weeks leading **up to** the festival.

16.6

- 1 This dress takes me back to **my childhood in the 1960s**.
- 2 Kira had dreamed of becoming a great actor, **but her plans didn't pan out**.
- 3 Peter reminds me of you **when you were a little boy**.
- 4 Many of the buildings in my city **date back to the 19th century**.
- 5 The house was turned into a **convenience store in the 1980s**.

16.7

- 1 The doctor's off tomorrow, so could we **bring your appointment forward to** today?
- 2 Colin is working hard because the deadline for his article is **coming up**.
- 3 Roland **looks back on** his college days with pleasure.
- 4 All the streets were decorated in the weeks **leading up to** the festival.
- 5 I like to listen to music and **think back to** my days as a musician in Paris.
- 6 The building project has just begun. Months of construction work **lie ahead**.

17

17.3

- 1 Take track delays into consideration when estimating how long the journey will take.
- 2 We've been meaning to get a new kitchen for years, but haven't found the time for it.
- 3 Giovanni forgot about the art project, but he managed to do it without preparation.
- 4 The two directors had several meetings to make the new contract more definite.
- 5 I asked Sabrina if she wanted to go camping, but she rejected the idea.
- 6 The negotiating teams stayed up to discuss and reach an agreement on a new treaty.

17.4

- 1 They stayed up until after midnight **hammering out** a new treaty.
- 2 Cleo pretended to be sick to **get out of** going out.
- 3 Dexter was going to ask Becky out, but he **chickened out**.
- 4 You need to **think ahead** and save money for the future.

17.5

- 1 You should **plan ahead** before setting off on a long car journey.
- 2 Seb said he'd help me paint the house, but he **went back on** his promise.
- 3 **Look ahead** and picture what you want to be doing in five years' time.
- 4 The store **weaseled out of** giving us a refund by claiming we had broken the vase.
- 5 Ed had promised to do a bungee jump with me, but **backed out** at the last minute.

17.6

- A 6 B 5 C 1 D 3 E 2 F 7 G 4

18.4

- 1 The soup has a tomato and basil flavor.
- 2 Marcus used his telescope.
- 3 Robert searched for his glasses.
- 4 Please listen to me!

18.5

- 1 stink out
- 2 look at
- 3 listen out for
- 4 listen in on
- 5 sniff around
- 6 look through

18.6

- 1 sniff around
- 2 look at
- 3 look out over
- 4 look away

18.7

- 1 listen in (on)
- 2 stink out
- 3 look out for
- 4 hear about
- 5 listen up
- 6 hear out
- 7 look on

18.8

- 1 Alex's cookies **smelled of** cinnamon. I asked to try one.
- 2 Have you **heard about** the new gym in town? It's supposed to be great.
- 3 Dayita **listened to** the radio while she ate her breakfast.
- 4 Fiona **spied on** her colleagues to steal their ideas.
- 5 Sarah and Dionne **looked into** the well. There was no sign of the bottom.

19.3

- A 2 B 5 C 1 D 3 E 4

19.4

- 1 Kazuo got the monkey to climb **down** by **offering it a banana**.
- 2 The explorers walked **into the cave**.
- 3 Doug dropped back to help one of the **other hikers, who had injured himself**.
- 4 As we came down from the summit, the **weather became much worse**.

- 5 The saleswoman came up to **Fabio and asked if he needed any help**.
- 6 Clive lifted his daughter up **so that she could see the deer**.

19.5

- 1 When I heard someone calling my name, I **turned around**.
- 2 Martin was exhausted, and began to **fall** behind the other runners.
- 3 Clive lifted his daughter **up** so that she could see the deer.
- 4 Janine grabbed her coat and walked **out** of the room.
- 5 Doug dropped **back** to help one of the other hikers, who had injured himself.

19.6

- 1 Tanya **turned away as** the nurse gave her the injection.
- 2 The monkey **climbed up the** tree with Kazuo's camera.
- 3 Helen told her son to **get down from** the garden wall.
- 4 As the train **went through the** mountain range, Ted took some photographs.

20.3

- 1 Leo is the youngest in his class, but manages to keep up with his classmates.
- 2 She's looking into how astronauts might travel to Mars one day.
- 3 Sam has dived into his new project. He spent all weekend working on it.
- 4 The library was full of students swotting up on English grammar.
- 5 At the start of your presentation, lay out the main points you are going to discuss.

20.4

- 1 Noah is **majoring in** international politics at college.
- 2 I kept making mistakes, so I decided to **start over**.
- 3 Patsy's research **focuses on** space travel.
- 4 Fiona **worked through** the problems in her code to fix the issues.

20.5

- 1 work through
- 2 move on to
- 3 count toward

- 4 mark down
- 5 focus on
- 6 lay out

20.6

- A 5 B 1 C 8 D 3 E 4 F 2 G 7 H 6

21.3

- 1 Schools close in July.
- 2 Marco did not punish Gio and Carmen.
- 3 Zosia reprimanded the children.
- 4 Rosie responds rudely to her teachers.

21.4

- 1 After the class, Arun packed up his things and got ready to leave.
- 2 Miguel handed in his assignment just before the deadline.
- 3 Ramu's working on a huge painting of New York.
- 4 The teacher handed out the worksheet to each student.

21.5

- 1 not stand for
- 2 hand in
- 3 drop out
- 4 play up

21.6

- 1 hand out (to)
- 2 wipe off
- 3 not stand for
- 4 drop out
- 5 turn to

21.7

- 1 Good morning class. Please **take out** your books.
- 2 The kids have been **playing up** all morning.
- 3 Despite the teacher's warnings, the children **carried on** misbehaving.
- 4 You've spent too much time **goofing off** this semester, Jesse.
- 5 Mateo and Juanita are very naughty, but Martina lets them **get away with** it.

22.4

- 1 Ted used to be very proactive, but he's been **slacking off** lately.
- 2 I've got lots to do! I need to **knuckle down** and get it finished.
- 3 Angela **meets up with** her colleagues once a week to discuss all their new ideas.

- ④ Our manager was busy, so she had to **call off** our meeting.
⑤ Jennie's been **slogging away** trying to finish writing her presentation.
⑥ Kamal's manager **chased up** the report, which was already a week late.
⑦ I **clock in** at 9am every morning.

22.5

A, C, D, F, G, I

22.6

- ① I'm not feeling very well today, so I'm going to call in sick.
② I've been very busy lately, but I have next week off work.
③ I **clock off** at 5pm every afternoon.
④ Ola is carrying out a survey about worker satisfaction.

22.7

- ① The applications for the new manager position are **piling up**. I'd better start looking through them.
② Fiona was struggling to finalize the company's accounts, but she kept **plugging away** at them.
③ Debbie **took** the afternoon **off** so she could go to the dentist.
④ Despite the storm, the engineers **soldiered on** and installed the new phone line.

23

23.2

- ① go back to
② draw on
③ head up
④ stick with

23.3

- ① Elliot found the job easily.
② Katie makes use of her experience.
③ Naina is planning to become a teacher.
④ I went back to work.
⑤ Diana leads the new department.
⑥ Chad is looking for jobs in the media.
⑦ Olivia is trying to become a journalist.

23.4

- ① stick with
② apply for
③ take over
④ go back to
⑤ wind down

23.5

- ① get into
② burn out
③ branch out (into)
④ put off
⑤ cash in on
⑥ fall back on
⑦ set out

24

24.2

- ① The bank agreed to write off the debt, saving Ethan's company from bankruptcy.
② We are proud to announce that our two banks are entering into a partnership.
③ Mario's gas station has just gone under. It had been struggling for a long time.
④ Katie's trying to drum up interest in her café by offering free samples of her cakes.

24.3

- ① Marco's garden center is doing well. It turns **over** almost \$250,000 a year.
② We need the CEO to **sign off** on this important decision.
③ The board has finally **come** to a decision about the new logo for the company.
④ Ellie's company deals **in** antiques. She sells pieces from all over the world.
⑤ Could you **draw up** a contract for our new clients?
⑥ The company is facing difficulties. We may need to lay **off** some staff.

24.4

- ① fall through
② come to
③ sign off
④ drum up
⑤ enter into
⑥ profit from

24.5

- ① Our business is growing, so we are **taking on** more staff.
② A new bookstore is **opening up** in our neighborhood.
③ Chrissie has just **started up** her own hair salon. It opened last week.
④ Gemma has **bought out** all the other partners.
⑤ Al's store is **selling off** a lot of its stock.
⑥ Alan's sportswear company **profited from** the cold weather.

25

25.3

- ① The number of people buying clothes online shot up last year.
② The coach divided the children up into two equal teams.
③ Shreya counted up the number of people wanting coffee and went to make some.
④ When Georgia was paying her check, she added on a 20% tip.

25.4

A 3 B 1 C 6 D 2 E 4 F 5

25.5

- ① Katie's bills have been **stacking up**. She's in a lot of debt now.
② The company's share price has been falling, but it's finally starting to **bottom out**.
③ The temperature varies a bit in the summer, but it **averages out at** about 25°C.
④ We estimated the cost of the project to be £14,900, but **rounded it up to** the nearest thousand.
⑤ If you want to set yourself a budget, start by **adding up** all your monthly expenses.

25.6

- ① count down ② add up ③ average out
(at) ④ level out ⑤ count out ⑥ bottom out

26

26.4

- ① scrape by ② carry off ③ win out
④ sail through ⑤ run into ⑥ give up
⑦ screw up

26.5

- ① screw up ② carry off ③ win out
④ come off ⑤ run into

26.6

- ① My teachers told me I'd never amount to anything, but now I'm a lawyer.
② Anita's hard work has paid off. The dress looks beautiful.
③ Many smaller stores have lost out since the supermarket opened in town.
④ Nia built on her experience working at a hotel to set up her own guesthouse.
⑤ Having supportive parents really contributed to my success.

26.7

- 1 Clive **muddled through** the interview without any preparation. He was shocked when he got the job.
- 2 When I didn't get into college, I started my own successful business. Everything **worked out** in the end!
- 3 The Scottish team **pulled off** an amazing victory, scoring two goals in the last four minutes.
- 4 When Al saw how many people were making money by selling things online, he decided to **get in on** it.
- 5 Kwase **sailed through** his driving test. He didn't make any mistakes.

27

27.4

- 1 If you're bored, **turn on** the television. There's a good movie on tonight.
- 2 When Ben got home, he realized that he'd forgotten his keys and was **locked out**.
- 3 My parents have decided to **move away** and live in the country.
- 4 When Elsa heard her favorite song on the radio, she **turned up** the volume.
- 5 The street lights **come on** at dusk, when the sun sets.
- 6 The lights in the house **went out**, so Clara lit some candles.
- 7 We finally sold our house. We're **moving out** today.

27.5

- 1 go off
- 2 move in
- 3 lock out
- 4 turn on
- 5 turn down

27.6

- A 3 B 1 C 6 D 2 E 5 F 4

27.7

- 1 turn off
- 2 lock in
- 3 leave on
- 4 turn down
- 5 come on

28

28.3

- 1 put back
- 2 chop down
- 3 pitch in
- 4 pull up
- 5 take out
- 6 clear out
- 7 wash up

28.4

- 1 Nousha's room looked much nicer after she'd put **up** some pictures.
- 2 Paul spent the whole afternoon pulling **up** weeds.
- 3 Karl swept **up** the trash from the party and put it into bags.
- 4 After finishing the gardening, Scott put his tools **away**.
- 5 Jason told me to mop **up** the water that I'd spilled on the floor.

28.5

- 1 The tree in our backyard died, so we had to **chop it down**.
- 2 I'm **digging up** the lavender bushes so I can move them to a different part of the garden.
- 3 I **wipe down** the table each evening after we've eaten.
- 4 We need to **tidy up** before the guests arrive.
- 5 The hedge in Doug's yard was getting too big, so he **cut it back**.

28.6

- 1 On Tuesday mornings, I **take** the trash out.
- 2 If the chicken smells bad, **throw it out**.
- 3 Ian **hung** his washing out to dry.
- 4 We **cleared out** the garage this weekend.
- 5 There was a mess to **clean up** after the party.

29

29.3

- 1 I always **cut off** the fat from the meat before cooking it.
- 2 My breakfast typically **consists of** bread and cheese, served with coffee.
- 3 Nadiya left the cherry pie on the windowsill to **cool down**.
- 4 Before serving the curry I made sure to **fish out** any bones.
- 5 My sister can **whip up** a tasty meal in minutes from just a few ingredients.

29.4

- 1 chop up
- 2 set aside
- 3 cut off
- 4 mix in
- 5 pour in
- 6 finish off
- 7 fish out
- 8 cool down
- 9 leave out

29.5

- 1 Patrick broke up the chocolate before adding it to the cake mixture.
- 2 My sister can whip up a tasty meal in minutes from just a few ingredients.
- 3 The sauce boiled over, leaving a mess on the stove top.
- 4 I always measure out all of my ingredients before trying a new recipe.
- 5 We managed to fill up three jars with the cookies we'd baked.

29.6

- 1 After chopping the vegetables, **set** them aside.
- 2 **Cut off** the fat from the meat before cooking it.
- 3 When the meat is cooked, **pour in** the stock.
- 4 **Mix in** the eggs with the other ingredients.
- 5 **Finish off** the stew by adding chopped parsley.
- 6 Before serving, make sure to **fish out** any bones.
- 7 For a vegetarian version, **leave out** the meat.

30

30.3

- 1 I washed down my pizza **with a cold drink**.
- 2 Our restaurant can cater for **about 100 customers at a time**.
- 3 After the wedding, **we all drank to the bride and groom**.
- 4 Lisa shared out the chocolates, **giving the children two each**.
- 5 I was going to make a lasagna, **but we've run out of pasta**.

30.4

- 1 Paul and Sarah ordered two hamburgers and sodas to take **away**.
- 2 The café was about to close, so we drank **up** and got ready to leave.
- 3 I washed **down** my pizza with a cold drink.
- 4 After a long day at the beach, my kids wolfed **down** their dinner.
- 5 Daniel broke **off** a piece of bread and dipped it in the olive oil.

30.5

- 1 run out of
- 2 go off
- 3 eat up
- 4 wash down
- 5 go together

30.6

- 1 eat out
- 2 top up
- 3 drink to
- 4 eat in
- 5 go together

31.3

- 1 Ken's currently working **toward** getting a black belt in judo.
- 2 Nathan told his daughters to stop lazing **about**, and help to tidy the house.
- 3 After the exam, the students went to the local park to wind **down**.
- 4 I recently got back **into** cycling. I hadn't done it since I was a teenager.
- 5 On Friday evenings, Josh likes to kick **back** and watch some television.
- 6 Anastasia absolutely lives **for** skiing. She goes to the mountains whenever she can.

31.4

- 1 Adi's painting skills are really coming along. He might become an artist one day.
- 2 I found running very hard when I started, but I get a lot of satisfaction out of it now.
- 3 Learning the piano isn't easy, but if you stick at it, you could become a great pianist.
- 4 Fabio could have been a great guitarist, but he threw it all away by never practicing.

31.5

- 1 curl up
- 2 start out
- 3 sit around
- 4 live for

31.6

- 1 I spend most Sundays lying about the house.
- 2 Aden needs to loosen up and dance with us.
- 3 On my days off, I like to sit around the garden.
- 4 Luiza spent the evening curled up on the couch.
- 5 After a stressful day, I take a bath to chill out.

32.2

- 1 heal up
- 2 throw up
- 3 flare up
- 4 come around
- 5 seize up
- 6 go around

32.3

- 1 Elaine's rash began to clear **up** after she started using the cream.
- 2 I think I'm coming down **with** the flu.
- 3 Ella's been throwing **up** all day.
- 4 My son passed **on** the virus to his sisters.
- 5 It's taken me weeks to get **over** this cold, but I finally feel better.

32.4

- 1 Paola's hay fever usually **flares up** in the spring.
- 2 After a few hours, the swelling had started to **go down**.
- 3 Danny's thumb **swelled up** after he was stung by a wasp.
- 4 My brother's a nurse. He **cares for** sick people at the local hospital.
- 5 I was very sad to hear that your grandmother has **passed away**.

32.5

- 1 care for
- 2 feel up to
- 3 go around
- 4 wear off
- 5 pull through

33.3

- 1 After finishing the race, Sandra warmed **down** by stretching her legs.
- 2 Jamal was completely wiped **out** after cycling up the mountain.
- 3 Clara was sent **off** the pitch after pushing over another player.
- 4 Five runners have gotten **through** to the final. Whoever wins this race will win the trophy.
- 5 My sister is a judo champion. She ranks **among** the best in the country.
- 6 I struggle to keep **up** with my brother. He's much fitter than I am.

33.4

- 1 Before playing a game of soccer, I always warm up by jogging slowly.
- 2 For this yoga position, you have to stretch your arms out as far as you can.
- 3 Pete wanted to start playing baseball, so he signed up for his school team.
- 4 Angela knocked Kirsten out in the first round of the competition.
- 5 My knee injury kept me from completing the marathon this year.

33.5

- 1 Clara was sent **off** the pitch after pushing over another player.
- 2 The crowd cheered Tony on as he approached the finish line.
- 3 I picked up my bow and aimed another arrow at the target.
- 4 Playing tennis all afternoon with Gus has worn Charlie out.
- 5 Leo works out at his local gym every morning.

33.6

- 1 keep up (with)
- 2 warm up
- 3 size up
- 4 turn around
- 5 burn off
- 6 cheer on
- 7 work off

34.4

- 1 The new music channel is **aimed at** people who like jazz.
- 2 At the start of the horror movie, scary music started to **fade in**.
- 3 My new headphones help me concentrate by **filtering out** background noise.
- 4 This new TV show **feeds on** people's curiosity about aliens.
- 5 The noise from the parade **faded away** as it moved away from us.
- 6 I **tune into** my favorite radio show every Sunday morning.

34.5

- 1 This new TV show feeds on people's curiosity about aliens.
- 2 I tune into my favorite radio show every Sunday morning.
- 3 The architects have mocked up a model of the new museum.
- 4 The new music channel is aimed at people who like jazz.
- 5 Greg and Chloe colored in pictures of dinosaurs after their trip to the museum.

35.2

- 1 get around
- 2 check in
- 3 get back from
- 4 put up
- 5 soak up

35.3

- 1 We brought you back some local olives.
- 2 They checked out of the hotel.
- 3 Marimar and I went off to Miami recently.
- 4 It was great to get away for a few days!

35.4

- 1 On our way to Barcelona, **we stopped over in a hotel for the night**.
- 2 Whenever we set out on a hike, **we always take a compass and a map**.

- ③ We set off for Chicago at dawn **when there would be less traffic**.
- ④ When she arrived at the hotel, **Julia went to the reception to check in**.
- ⑤ We managed to put the tent up **even though it was raining heavily**.

35.5

- ① When Krishna **arrived at** the villa, the party had begun.
- ② We're **packing in** lots of sightseeing during our vacation.
- ③ It was great to **get away** for a few days.
- ④ We've been in Cyprus for a few days, but we're **heading for** Athens on today.
- ⑤ On your way to London, you'll **pass by** Cambridge.

36

36.2

- ① Kirsty talked the workers **through the new software system**.
- ② Shona wanted to dye her hair purple, but **her sister talked her out of it**.
- ③ Diana is always rambling on about **how things were better when she was a child**.
- ④ Uncle Toby still talks down to me like I'm **a child, even though I'm 25**.
- ⑤ Shut up **and listen to me for once!**
- ⑥ My kids talked me into **getting a puppy**.

36.3

- ① drown out
- ② mouth off
- ③ ramble on
- ④ tone down
- ⑤ talk down
- ⑥ launch into

36.4

- A 6 B 1 C 2
D 4 E 3
F 5

36.5

- ① I think you should **tone down** your language.
- ② Andy **blurted out** the name of the winner by mistake.
- ③ The lecturer **droned on** for what felt like hours.
- ④ Marco is always **talking at** people and not letting them speak.
- ⑤ After the concert, I **struck up** a conversation with the guitarist.

36.6

- ① Ben's not keen on buying a new car. I'm trying to **talk him round**.
- ② When soccer **came up in** conversation, Bill and I realized we support the same team.
- ③ Craig was trying to tell a joke, but **tailed off** as he realized that no one was listening.
- ④ While Julia was explaining her idea, Rupert **cut in** to tell her she was wrong.
- ⑤ Simone spent the whole of lunch **mouthin' off** about how much she hates her new boss.

37

37.3

- ① make written notes
- ② reduce in size
- ③ write or type something in full from notes
- ④ write something quickly or roughly
- ⑤ represent, be an abbreviation for
- ⑥ read with great attention
- ⑦ complete a form

37.4

- ① Before you can use the gym, you need to fill in this form.
- ② As the judge read out the names of the winners, Pablo waited hopefully.
- ③ When completing the form, Damian wrote in his age.
- ④ Alexandra flicked through a magazine while she waited to get her hair cut.

37.5

- ① Max **read through** the full report before giving his opinion.
- ② Ted always **writes out** his essays instead of typing them.
- ③ "UFO" **stands for** Unidentified Flying Object.
- ④ The journalist **jotted down** the details as Dan described his role in the new movie.
- ⑤ Fatima **read up** on ancient Greece before her history exam.

37.6

- ① I'll try to cut **out** 500 words from my essay if it is too long.
- ② *Adventures in the Wilderness* should make for interesting reading!
- ③ Paco read the book and noted **down** the most important points.
- ④ We **pored over** the old document looking for clues.

38

38.4

- ① Rob wants to **follow up** on the conversation we had about the new logo.
- ② Claudia sent wedding invitations **out** to all her friends and family.
- ③ Dave passed **on** a message telling me that Rob had called.
- ④ Sorry, I can't hear you very well, I'm afraid. You keep **breaking up**.
- ⑤ I've called Olly a few times this evening, but I can't get **through**.
- ⑥ Could you please speak **up**? I can't hear you very well!

38.5

- ① Chris emailed me a week ago, but I only just remembered to email him back.
- ② Murat completed all the forms and sent them off to the passport office.
- ③ I love receiving letters from my dad. I always write back immediately.
- ④ Claudia sent wedding invitations out to all her friends and family.

38.6

- ① put through ② pick up ③ call back
④ speak up

38.7

- ① Anna works from home on Tuesdays, so she will **dial into** the meeting.
- ② I'll **put you through** to Mr. Yamamoto now, madam.
- ③ Our company is trying to **reach out** to new customers by offering discounts.
- ④ After chatting for over an hour, Simon and I said goodbye **and hung up**.
- ⑤ Hi Laura, sorry I'm cooking at the moment, can I **call you back** in 10 minutes?

39

39.4

- A 3 B 1 C 7 D 2 E 5 F 4 G 8 H 6

39.5

- ① When my husband suggested buying a new kitchen, I did what he suggested.
- ② When I told my friends I was starting my own business, they all **oered** support.
- ③ They gave us too much information during the training course.

- 4 Experts believe that Joan Miró created this painting because of the distinctive style.
5 The artist's feelings of anger are communicated strongly in this painting.

39.6

SEPARABLE:
bombard with
bounce off
think over
think through
put to

INSEPARABLE:

run with
come across
touch on
come up with
get behind

39.7

- 1 The creative manager asked her team to **throw out** as many ideas as they could.
2 It finally **dawned on** me that Claude was the killer.
3 We have **ruled out** three of the candidates. It's a choice between Danny and Carmen.
4 Ted has **come up** with some good ideas for a new logo.
5 Selma is very creative. She **thinks up** lots of wonderful dishes.

40

40.2

- 1 expand on
2 dumb down
3 come back to
4 point out
5 go back over

40.3

- 1 put across 2 dumb down
3 point out 4 come back to
5 allude to 6 go back over

41

41.3

- 1 see through
2 gloss over
3 cover up

- 4 add up
5 fall for
6 make up
7 level with

41.4

- 1 make out
2 level with
3 mess around
4 add up
5 put on
6 catch on

41.5

- 1 I think she knows more than she's **letting on**.
2 We **fell for** the salesman's talk. The car we bought broke down after a few days.
3 When it **came out** that he was bankrupt, I was shocked!
4 Conan finally **owned up** to breaking the window. He'd been denying it all morning.
5 The CEO has been **playing down** the company's financial problems.
6 I've been trying to **find out** from Nisha who Sammy's dating.
7 Josie tried to **explain away** the damage to my car by saying it was just a small scratch.

42

42.2

- 1 Helen has put me onto this great new hair salon. I'm going to check it out.
2 Lisa's speech in favor of a new nature reserve has brought many people around to the idea.
3 Kendra was very nervous, but was happy to see her friends **rooting for** her.
4 Zoe's daughter said her elder brother had put her up to stealing the cookies.

42.3

- 1 Kendra was very nervous, but was happy to see her friends **rooting for** her.
2 Rahul was skeptical about electric cars until the salesman **reasoned with** him.
3 The crowd **urged** Mona **on** as she approached the end of the tightrope.
4 He eventually **won him over** by explaining how eco-friendly they are.
5 My son was upset, so I bought him an ice cream to **buck him up**.

43

43.3

- 1 During the debate, she hit out at her opponents.
2 I can count on my sister to comfort me when I'm upset.
3 Paul usually shrugs off criticism of his cooking.
4 Carla stood up to the bullies and told them not to be mean.
5 He pulled her up on her attitude towards the environment.

43.4

B, C, D, F, H, I

43.5

- 1 Everyone agrees **with** John that Sian should get the job.
2 Everyone criticized Magda's art, but she rose **above** it and is a successful artist now.
3 The workers are pushing **back on** the management's policies.
4 They disagreed **with** each other about what color to paint the kitchen.

43.6

- 1 My aunt disapproves.
2 Paulina always supports our boss.
3 Laura opposed Ankita's proposals.
4 Carla defended herself.
5 They need to solve small problems.

43.7

- 1 I think Sonia **has** something **against** me. She never wants to talk to me.
2 Martin and Simon **disagreed with** each other about what color to paint the kitchen.
3 Our local representative has **come out against** the plans for a new housing development.
4 Donna bought her brother some chocolates to **make up for** the things she had said to him.
5 Terry's colleagues always make fun of his shirts, but he just **laughs it off**.

44

44.4

- 1 back off 2 speak out 3 take back
4 stay out of 5 patch up 6 base on
7 stick up for

44.5

A 3 B 6 C 1 D 2 E 5 F 4

44.6

- 1 back off 2 stay out of
3 back up 4 stick up for
5 fall out (with) 6 lash out (at)
7 back down

44.7

- 1 When Pete showed Martin the facts, Martin had to **climb down** and admit he was wrong.
2 The manager **laid into** the players after they lost another match.
3 They had **fallen out** when they both applied for the same job.
4 Craig's parents finally caved **in** and bought him a games console.
5 Sorry, I'm not sure what you're **getting at**.

45

45.3

- 1 Ed's become stronger.
2 She has helped me manage my problems.
3 Kathy is trying to recover from it.
4 Anna became happier.

45.4

- 1 work through
2 crack up
3 settle down
4 light up
5 burst out

45.5

- 1 Donny's face **lit up** when he saw the presents waiting for him on the table.
2 Jack's a very private person, but he finally opened **up** and told me how he feels.
3 When Linda feels stressed, she listens to music to help her **calm down**.
4 The children **burst out** laughing when the clown pretended to fall over.

45.6

- 1 I've been **checking up on** Andrei every day since he lost his job.
2 Craig had had a bad day at work, but watching a funny movie **cheered him up**.
3 Hiro's jokes are hilarious. He really **cracks me up**.
4 Yana was upset, but she **brightened up** when I bought her tickets to a concert.

45.7

- 1 Sophie needs to **lighten up**. She's still studying even though it's her birthday today.
2 I really **feel** for Kim. She's been so upset since her cat went missing.
3 Kathy is finally **moving on** after her breakup with Jamal last year.
4 Petra's been sulking for days. I wish she'd **snap out of it**.

46

46.2

- 1 My husband tenses up whenever I **try to talk about money with him**.
2 This song is so moving. **It always sets me off**.
3 Troy freaked out when he noticed the **enormous spider climbing up the wall**.
4 Clare flew into a rage when **her computer crashed and lost all her work**.
5 Stop taking it out on me. **It's not my fault the weather is awful**.
6 My grandchildren love to wind me up. **They're always playing tricks on me**.

46.3

- 1 Sadie's anger about her boss's rude behavior had been **building up**.
2 Tamal and Sam **choked up** when the hero died at the end of the movie.
3 When Lisa walked onto the stage she **froze up**. She couldn't say anything!
4 He eventually **broke down** and admitted that he was really upset.
5 My manager **blew up** when I told him that I'd left my work laptop on the train.

46.4

- 1 Bella **welled up** when Pete asked her to marry him.
2 It eventually **spilled over**, and Sadie told her how she felt.
3 Chris had been **bottling up** his emotions for a long time.
4 Work has been **weighing on** me a lot recently.
5 Clare **flew into** a rage when her computer crashed and lost all her work.

46.5

- 1 get down
2 wind up
3 break down
4 blow up

47

47.2

- 1 Sonia opted **out** of the boat trip. She always gets sea sick.
2 Yasmin has been toying **with** the idea of getting her hair cut short.
3 The workers wanted a 5% pay raise, but settled **for** 3%.
4 Shona regrets her decision to quit, but she's going to have to live **with** it.
5 After a lot of thought, Rob went **for** the fish instead of the steak.

47.3

- 1 decide on
2 factor in
3 mull over
4 pick out
5 opt out
6 lean toward

47.4

- 1 weigh up 2 narrow down 3 pick out
4 sleep on 5 lean toward

47.5

- 1 Moving to New Zealand next year **hinges on us** saving enough money.
2 Can you tell us how you **settled on** a winner?
3 Lisa found it hard to choose a dress, but eventually **decided on** the red one.
4 Stephen is **banking on this** new recipe to impress his guests.

48

48.2

A 3 B 5 C 1 D 4 E 2

48.3

- 1 I was relying on Selma to bring candles for the cake, but she **let me down**.
2 I'll never **live down** the time I dropped Erin's birthday cake in the middle of her party.
3 Coralie's graph didn't make sense, so she looked through the data again to see where she'd **slipped up**.
4 When Chris got home from work, he realized that he had **mixed his bag up with** Simon's.
5 The spelling mistake in Juanita's homework **jumped out at** me.

49

49.4

- After the leak in the room above, it looked like the ceiling might fall in.
- The dog knocked over the plant pot as it chased the cat.
- Jorge took the old clock apart to fix it.
- When I got home, I found that the dog had torn a cushion apart.

49.5

A 3 B 1 C 4 D 6 E 2 F 5

49.6

- smash up
- wear out
- bang into
- trip over
- fall in
- break off

49.7

- I **banged into** the door while leaving the house.
- Colin accidentally drove into a tree and **smashed up** his van.
- Rodrigo slammed the door so hard that the pictures **fell off** the wall.
- The old book **came apart** in the librarian's hands.
- The drain was **clogged up** with old leaves, so I had to unblock it.
- Sanjay's old car is **falling apart**. He's had it since he was a teenager.
- The old manor house Andrei wants to buy looks as if it's about to **fall down**.

50

50.2

A 5 B 1 C 6 D 4 E 2 F 3 G 8 H 7

50.3

- Whenever Gitanjali has a problem, she goes to her grandmother for advice.
- While climbing the mountain, we had to deal with strong winds and heavy rain.
- The proposals for a new highway have encountered a lot of local opposition.
- One of the pipes was leaking, so we asked a plumber to fix it.
- Writing your thesis is easier if you separate it into small sections.

- It's taken me all evening to find out how to turn on this new television.

50.4

SEPARABLE:

- break down
- thrash out
- brush aside
- think through

INSEPARABLE:

- turn to
- come up against
- crop up
- get around

50.5

- turn out
- think through
- sort out
- clear up
- brush aside
- thrash out
- check out

51

51.3

- I didn't mean to tell the team **that it was your birthday**. It just slipped out.
- The movie star tried to hush up **the fact that she had a new boyfriend**.
- Jessica has been keeping **the name of her new boyfriend from me**.
- I was bowled over when Nadia announced **that she had been accepted into dance school**.
- Mollie crept up on her grandfather **while he slept in the garden**.

51.4

- Clara can't believe she passed her exams. It's going to take a while for it to sink in.
- People have woken up to the fact that we need to look after the environment.
- I was shopping at the antiques market when I stumbled upon a valuable necklace.
- My best friend **sprang** it on me last night that she's moving to Canada.
- I was taken **aback** when Tia and Juan told me they were getting married.

51.5

- play along
- bump into
- cotton onto
- give away

51.6

- I stumbled upon a valuable necklace at the antiques market.
- Jessica has been keeping the name of her new boyfriend from me.

- Mollie crept up on her grandfather while he slept in the garden.
- We were all eating our dinner when the dog burst into the room.

52

52.4

- be removed
- appear (on screen)
- do something to solve a problem
- have an opinion of something
- go toward a place
- escape with something
- abolish, no longer need or use

52.5

A 6 B 5 C 1 D 3 E 2 F 4

52.6

- Riya was disappointed with her wedding cake, and insisted it be **done over**.
- With hot weather expected, thousands of tourists **made for** the coast.
- Lots of talented people **make up** our circus's team of acrobats.
- Natsuo **came across** the room to speak to us.
- The council has to decide what it's going to **do about** the litter problem.
- Luanne struggled to **make out** what the train conductor was saying.
- No matter how much we clean it, this graffiti won't **come off** the wall.

52.7

- Hetty's career as a musician **came about** after a producer saw her performing.
- Derek sat down in front of the TV when the ten o'clock news **came on**.
- Luanne struggled to **make out** what the train conductor was saying.
- When I tried to log in, a message **came up** saying that my account had been blocked.
- Lots of talented people **make up** our circus's team of acrobats.

53

53.3

- Cheryl's dog keeps **getting over** the fence into the neighbor's backyard.
- Harry burned the dinner and **set off** the smoke detector.

- ③ As Martin walked home late at night, fear began to **set in**.
 ④ It's almost eleven o'clock. We should **get down to work**.
 ⑤ Mary **set out** all her qualifications and experience in her resume.
 ⑥ Lee's speed **sets him apart from** the other players in the tournament.

53.4

SEPARABLE:

set back
set on
get across
get together

INSEPARABLE:

get around
get up (from)
get to
set in

53.5

- ① set on ② get to ③ set back
 ④ get back at ⑤ get across
 ⑥ get together ⑦ set up

53.6

- ① Lee **got** his fishing rod out of the garage and carried it to his car.
 ② The security guard threatened to **set** his dog on us if we didn't leave immediately.
 ③ Can you help me **get** the shopping in, please?
 ④ Before accusing Simon, the police had to **get** their facts **together**.
 ⑤ As soon as we **got to** the ski resort, we went straight to the slopes.

54

54.2

- ① My daughter attends ballet classes every Saturday morning.
 ② There's something happening next door. I can hear loud music.
 ③ James reviewed the company's accounts to check for mistakes.
 ④ Help yourself to some cakes. There are enough for everyone.
 ⑤ Malachai experienced a period of unhappiness after his dog died.
 ⑥ After I got back from the dentist, it took a couple of hours for the pain to disappear.

54.3

- A 5 B 1 C 2 D 6 E 4 F 3
 G 8 H 7

54.4

- ① Michelle and I go back years. I've known her since kindergarten.
 ② My new trainer is called Zachariah, though he usually goes by Zac.
 ③ Buying water in plastic bottles goes against my principles.
 ④ As soon as I realized Orla had forgotten her bag, I went after her.
 ⑤ The children watched the hot-air balloon slowly go up into the air.

54.5

- ① Parents often have to go without sleep when they have a new baby.
 ② Help yourself to some cakes. There are enough to go **around**.
 ③ Kelly's decided to go **for** the job at the software company. It's very well paid.
 ④ Rob and I sat on the beach watching the sun go down.
 ⑤ A team of firefighters went **into** the burning building.
 ⑥ All the money we make today will go **toward** funding the new school library.
 ⑦ Even though it was a cloudy day, Ramon decided to go **ahead** with the picnic.

55

55.4

- ① Cassie followed the instructions carefully to put her new wardrobe together.
 ② The waste collectors came to take away the bags of trash.
 ③ Martha played the violin as a child, but gave it up when she left school.
 ④ The police stopped the criminal, and took the stolen money from him.
 ⑤ Liam finished decorating the cake and put it on a stand.

55.5

- ① The café on the high street is **giving out** samples of their new range of cookies.
 ② Denise took a jar **down** from the shelf to give her dog a biscuit.
 ③ Angela is upset about her divorce, but she's trying to **put it** behind her.
 ④ Seeing the black clouds, Tim went outside to take the washing **in**.

- ⑤ My son had been asking for an ice cream all day. I finally **gave in** and bought him one.

55.6

- ① The fitness instructor put the class **through a tough training program**.
 ② Scarlett had to put up with **busy trains every day on her way to work**.
 ③ Angela is upset about her divorce, **but she's trying to put it behind her**.
 ④ Amara took her mother aside to **tell her that she was pregnant**.
 ⑤ The café on the high street is giving out **free samples of their new cakes**.
 ⑥ Eliza has really taken to golf. **She never thought she'd like it**.
 ⑦ Jim's mother asked him to take **his younger brother along to the skate park**.

55.7

- ① Denise took a jar down from the shelf to give her dog a biscuit.
 ② Angela is upset about her divorce, but she's trying to put it behind her.
 ③ Seeing the black clouds, Tim went outside to take the washing in.
 ④ Eliza has really taken to golf. She never thought she'd like it.
 ⑤ Amara took her mother aside to tell her that she was pregnant.

56

56.2

- ① fire away ② come in ③ bring it on
 ④ go ahead

56.3

- ① go away ② look out ③ go ahead
 ④ fire away ⑤ bring it on ⑥ get out
 ⑦ come on ⑧ come in

Index of phrasal verbs

Numbers refer to the
module number

A

act out 40.1
add on 25.1
add together 25.2
add up 14.1, 25.1, 41.2
agree with 43.1
aim at 33.1, 34.2
allow for 17.1
allude to 40.1
amount to 26.3
answer back 21.2
apply for 23.1
arrive at 35.1, 47.1
ask after 1.1
ask out 3.2
attribute to 39.2
average out (at) 25.1

B

back down 44.3
back o 44.3
back out 17.2
back up 12.1, 44.2
backup R6
bang into 49.1
bank on 47.1
base on 44.1
beat up 13.1
beaten-up R6
bet on 47.1
blow away 51.2
blow out 27.3
blow over 11.1
blow up 46.1
blurt out 36.1, 51.1
boil down to 39.3
boil over 29.1
bombard with 39.1
boot up (UK) 12.1
bottle up 46.1

bottom out 25.1
bounce back 32.1
bounce o 39.1
bowl over 51.2
branch out (into) 23.1
break down 9.1, 46.1, 50.1
 see also broken-down R6
breakdown R5
break-in R5
break in(to) 13.1
break o 30.1, 49.1
break out (of) 13.1
break up 3.2, 15.1, 21.1, 29.1,
 38.1
breakup R5
brighten up 11.1, 45.1
bring about 7.1
bring along 4.2
bring around 42.1
bring back 16.2, 35.1
bring forward (to) 16.3
bring in 13.1
bring it on 56.1
bring out 10.1
bring together 3.1
bring up 2.1
broken-down R6
brush aside 50.1
buck up 42.1
bucket down 11.1
build on 26.1
build up 46.1
bump into 51.2
burn o 33.2
burn out 23.1
burst in(to) 51.2
burst out 45.1
butter up 1.1
button up 6.1
buy out 24.1
buy up 10.1
bygone R6

C

call back 38.1
call for 13.2
call in 4.1, 22.1, 50.1
call o 22.2
call on 13.2
calm down 11.1, 45.2
care for 3.2, 32.1
carry o 26.1
carry on 21.2
carry out 22.3
cash in on 23.1
catch on 41.1
catch out 41.2
catch up (with) 5.1
catch up on 22.3
cater for 30.1
cave in 44.3
chase up 22.3
check in(to) 35.1
check o 10.1
check out 10.1, 35.1, 50.1
checkout R5
check up on 45.2
checkup R5
cheer on 33.1
cheer up 45.1
chicken out 17.2
chill out 31.2
chip in 14.1
choke up 46.1
chop down 28.2
chop up 29.2
clean up 28.1
clear away 28.1
clear out 28.1
clear up 11.1, 32.1, 50.1
click on 12.2
climb down 19.1, 44.3
climb up 19.1
clock in 22.1

clock o 22.1
clog up 49.2
close down 24.1
cloud over 11.1
color in 34.1
come about 52.1
come across 1.2, 39.2, 52.1
come along 5.1, 31.1, 52.1
come apart 49.1
come around 15.1, 32.1
come back 2.2
come back to 40.1
come down (from) 19.1
come down to 47.1
come down with 32.1
come in 4.1, 56.1
 see also incoming R6
come into 14.1
come o 6.1, 26.1, 52.1
come o it 56.1
come on 27.3, 52.1, 56.1
come out 5.1, 6.1, 12.3, 41.1, 52.1
come out against 43.1
come out with 36.1
come over 4.2
come through 52.1
come to 14.1, 24.1
come under 52.1
come up 16.1, 36.1, 50.1, 52.1
 see also upcoming R6
come up against 50.1
come up to 19.1
come up with 39.1
compete with 7.2
confide in 3.1
consist of 29.1
contend with 50.1
contribute to 26.3
cool down 11.1, 29.1
cope with 45.2
cordon o 13.1
cotton on(to) (UK) 51.1

cough up 14.1
 count down 25.1
 count on 43.1
 count out 25.1
 count toward 20.1
 count up 25.1
 cover up 6.1, 41.2
 cover-up R5
 crack down (on) 13.1
 crackdown R5
 crack up 45.1
 cram in (UK) 20.1
 creep up on 15.1, 51.2
 crop up 50.1
 cross o 0.1
 cross out 48.1
 curl up 31.2
 cut back 14.1, 28.2
 cut down 37.1
 cut in 36.1
 cut o 29.2
 cut out 9.1, 37.1

D

dash o (UK) 5.2
 date back to 16.2
 dawn on 39.2
 deal in 24.1
 deal with 50.1
 decide on 47.1
 dial in(to) 38.1
 die away 34.3
 die down 11.1
 die out 7.1
 dig up 28.2
 dip into 37.2
 disagree with 43.1
 dive in(to) 20.1
 divide by 25.2
 divide up (into) 25.1
 do about 52.3
 do away with 52.3
 do over (US) 52.3
 do up 6.1, 52.3
 do without 30.1
 double back 19.1
 doze o 8.4

drag into 44.2
 drag on 15.1
 drag out 15.1
 draw on 23.1
 draw out 15.1
 see also drawn-out R6
 draw up 24.1
 drawn-out R6
 dress up (as) 6.1
 drift apart 3.1
 drink to 30.2
 drink up 30.2
 drive o 9.2
 drone on 36.1
 drop back 19.1
 drop in 4.1
 drop o 8.4, 9.1
 drop out 21.1
 drown out 36.1
 drum up 24.1
 dumb down 40.1

E

ease o 1.1
 eat in 30.1
 eat into 15.1
 eat out 30.1
 eat up 30.1
 egg on 42.1
 email back 38.3
 end up 17.1, 35.1
 enter into 24.1
 even out 25.1
 expand on 40.1
 explain away 41.2

F

face up to 7.1
 factor in 47.1
 fade away 34.3
 fade in 34.3
 fall apart 46.1, 49.3
 fall back on 23.1
 fall behind 19.1, 20.1
 fall down 49.3
 fall for 3.2, 41.2

fall in 49.3
 fall o 49.3
 fall out 44.3, 49.3
 see also falling-out R5
 fall over 49.3
 fall through 24.1
 falling-out R5
 farm out (to) 24.1
 feed on 34.2
 feel for 45.2
 feel up to 32.1
 fight back 43.1
 figure out 50.1
 fill in 37.1, 40.1
 fill up 29.1
 filter out 34.3
 find out 41.1
 finish o 29.2
 finish with (UK) 3.2
 fire away 56.1
 firm up 17.1
 fish out 29.1
 fit in 1.1, 15.1
 fizzle out 3.2
 flare up 32.1
 flick through 37.2
 flood back 16.2
 flood in 1.1
 fly into 46.1
 focus on 20.1
 fold up 6.1
 follow up (on) 38.2
 follow-up R6
 fork out (for) 14.1
 freak out 46.1
 free up 15.1
 freeze over 11.1
 freeze up 46.1
 freshen up 8.1
 frown on 43.1
 fuss over 1.1

G

gang up (on) 1.1
 gather up 1.2
 get across 53.1
 get ahead (at) 23.1

get around 35.1, 50.1, 53.1
 get around to 17.1
 get at 44.1
 get away 13.1, 35.1
 getaway R5, R6
 get away with 21.2
 get back (from) 1.2, 35.1
 get back at 53.1
 get back into 31.1
 get back to 38.2
 get back together 3.2
 get behind 39.1
 get by 14.1
 get down 19.1, 46.1, 53.1
 get down to 53.1
 get in 8.1, 9.1, 53.1
 get in on 26.3
 get into 23.1, 31.1
 get o 9.1, 22.1
 get on 2.1, 9.1, 15.1
 get on with 8.3
 get out 9.1, 53.1, 56.1
 get out of 17.2, 31.1
 get over 32.1, 45.2, 53.1
 get over with 53.1
 get through (to) 33.1, 38.1
 get to 46.1, 53.1
 get together 5.1, 53.1
 get-together R5
 get up 8.1, 53.1
 give away 51.1, 55.3
 giveaway R5
 give in 55.3
 give out 55.3
 give up 26.2, 55.3
 gloss over 41.2
 go about 54.1
 go after 54.1
 go against 54.1
 go ahead 54.1, 56.1
 go-ahead R5
 go along 54.1
 go along with 43.1
 go around 32.1, 54.1
 go away 54.1, 56.1
 go back 16.3, 35.1, 54.1
 go back on 17.2
 go back over 40.1

go back to 23.1
 go by 15.1, 54.1
see also bygone R6
 go down 12.1, 32.1, 54.1
 go for 47.1, 54.1
 go forward 16.3
 go in(to) 54.1
 go into 23.1
 go o 3.1, 8.1, 27.3, 30.1, 35.1
 go on 54.1
see also ongoing R6
 go out 3.2, 5.1, 27.3, 54.1
see also outgoing R6
 go over 54.1
 go through 19.1, 54.1
 go through with 17.1
 go to 54.1
 go together 30.1
 go toward 54.1
 go under 24.1
 go up 54.1
 go with 6.1
 go without 54.1
 goof o (US) 21.2
 grow into 6.1
 grow out of 2.1, 6.1
 grow up 2.1

H

hack into 12.1
 hammer out 17.1
 hand in (to) 21.1
 hand out (to) 21.1
 hand over 13.1
 hang on 15.2
 hang out 5.1, 28.1
 hang over 50.1
 hang up 6.1, 38.1
 have (something) against 43.1
 have o 22.3
 have over 4.1
 head for 35.1
 head o (to) 5.2, 8.1
 head up 23.1
 heal up (UK) 32.1
 hear about 18.1
 hear from 3.1

hear out 18.1
 heat up 29.1
 hinge on 47.1
 hire out (UK) 5.1
 hit out at 43.1
 hold up 15.2
 hurry up 15.1
 hush up 51.1

I

impact on 7.1
 improve on 7.2
 incoming R6
 input R5
 intake R5
 invite along (to) 4.1
 invite in 4.1
 invite over 4.2
 iron out 43.2

J

join in 33.1
 jot down 37.1
 jump out (at) 48.1

K

keep at 31.1
 keep from 33.1, 51.1
 keep up (with) 20.1, 33.1
 kick back 31.2
 kicko R5
 knock down 10.1
 knockdown R6
 knock out (of) 33.1
 knock over 49.1
 knuckle down 22.3

L

land in 48.1
 lash out (at) 44.1
 laugh o 43.2
 launch into 36.1
 lay into 44.1
 lay o 24.1

lay out 20.2
 laze about 31.2
 lead to 7.1
 lead up to 16.1
 lean toward 47.1
 leave behind 48.1
 leave on 27.3
 leave out 29.2
 leftover R6
 let down 48.1
 letdown R5
 let in 2.2
 let o (with) 21.2
 let on 41.1
 let out 2.2 6.1
 let up 11.1
 level out 25.1
 level with 41.1
 lie ahead 16.1
 lie around 31.2
 lie down 8.2
 lift up 19.1
see also uplifting R6
 light up 45.1
 lighten up 45.1
 line up 10.1
 listen in (on) 18.1
 listen out for 18.1
 listen to 18.1
 listen up 18.1
 live down 48.1
 live for 31.1
 live o 4.1
 live on 14.1
 live up to 7.2
 live with 2.1, 47.1
 liven up 5.1
 lock away 27.1
 lock in 27.1
 lock out 27.1
 log in(to) 12.1
 log out (of) 12.1
 look after 2.1
 look ahead 17.1
 look around 10.1
 look at 18.3
 look away 18.3
 look back (on) 16.2

look down on 1.1
 look for 18.3
 look forward to 16.1
 look into 18.3, 20.1
 look on 18.3
 look out 56.1
 look out for 18.3
 look out over 18.3
 look over 18.3
 look through 18.3
 look up 20.1
 look up to 1.1
 loosen up 31.2
 lose out (to) 26.2

M

made-up R6
 major in (US) 20.1
 make for 37.2, 52.2
 make into 34.1
 make of 52.2
 make o with 52.2
 make out 41.2, 52.2
 make up 41.2, 44.3, 52.2
see also made-up R6
 make up for 43.2
 mark down 20.2
 measure out 29.1
 measure up (to) 7.2
 meet up (with) 22.2
 mess around 21.2, 41.2
 mess up 49.1
 mill around 5.1
 miss out 48.1
 mist over 46.1
 mix in 29.1
 mix up (with) 48.1
 mix-up R5
 mock up 34.1
 mop up 28.1
 mount up 25.1
 mouth o 36.1
 move along 19.1
 move away 27.2
 move in(to) 27.2
 move on 20.2, 45.2
 move out (of) 27.2

muddle through 26.1
mull over 47.1
multiply by 25.2

N

name after 2.1
narrow down 47.1
nod o 3.4
not agree with 30.1
not stand for 21.2
note down 37.1

O

object to 43.1
occur to 39.2
o-putting R6
ongoing R6
open up 24.1, 45.2
opt out 47.1
outdated R6
outgoing R6
outspoken R6
outstanding R6
outstretched R6
outset R5
own up (to) 41.1

P

pack in 35.1
pack into 1.1
pack up 21.1
pan out 16.1
part with 1.2
pass away 32.1
pass by 35.1
pass on 32.1, 38.2
pass out 32.1
patch up 44.3
pay back 14.1
pay for 10.1
pay in(to) 14.1
pay o 4.1 26.1
pay up 14.1
pencil in 22.2
perk up 45.1

phase in 12.3
phase out 12.3
phone around 38.1
pick out 47.1
pick up 9.1, 10.1, 11.1, 28.1, 31.1, 38.1
pile up 22.3
pin down 17.1
pitch in 28.1
plan ahead 17.1
play along 51.2
play down 41.2
play up (UK) 21.2
plug away (at) 22.3
plug in(to) 27.3
point out 40.1
polish o 30.1
pop in (UK) 4.1
pore over 37.2
potter about 8.2
pour down 11.1
pour in 29.2
press on 19.1
print out 12.2
printout R5
profit from 24.1
pull in(to) 9.2
pull o 26.1
pull out (of) 9.2
pull over 9.2, 13.1
pull through 32.1
pull together 2.1
pull up 9.2, 28.2
pull up on (UK) 43.1
push back 16.3, 43.1
put across 40.1
put away 28.2
put back 28.1
put behind 55.1
put down 55.1
put down to 26.3
put forward 39.1
put in 2.2
see also input R5
put o 23.1, 55.1
see also o-putting R6
put on 6.1, 27.3, 41.2, 55.1
put onto 42.1

put out 55.1
put through 38.1, 55.1
put to 39.1
put together 55.1
put up 28.1, 35.1
put up to 42.1
put up with 55.1

R

ramble on 36.1
rank among 33.1
reach out (to) 38.3
read out 37.2
read through 37.2
read up on 37.2
reason with 42.1
reflect on 39.3
remind of 16.2
result in 7.1
ride on 26.3
rise above 43.2
roll in 11.1
roll out 12.3
root for 42.1
round down (to) 25.1
round up (to) 25.1
rub (it) in 48.1
rule out 39.1
run away 2.2
rundown R6
run for 13.2
run into 14.1, 26.2
run out (of) 15.1, 30.1
run up 14.1
run with 39.1

S

sail through 26.1
save up 14.1
scrape by 26.1
screw up 26.2
scribble down 37.1
scroll down (to) 12.2
scroll up (to) 12.2
see through 41.1
seize up 32.1

sell o 24.1
sell out (of) 10.1
sell up 24.1
send back 10.1
send o 33.1, 38.3
send out (to) 38.3
serve up 30.1
set about (UK) 8.3
set apart (from) 53.2
set aside 29.2
set back 53.2
setback R5
set in 53.2
set o 35.1, 46.1, 53.2
set on 53.2
set out 23.1, 35.1, 53.2
set up 3.2, 12.1, 53.2
settle down 2.1, 45.2
settle for 47.1
settle in(to) 27.2
settle on 47.1
settle up (with) 14.1
shake o 32.1
share out 30.1
shine through 45.1
shoot down 43.1
shoot o (UK) 5.2
shoot up 25.1
shop around 10.1
show around 4.1
show o (to) 6.1
show out 4.1
shrug o 43.2
shut down 12.1
shut up 36.1
side with 43.1
sign o on 24.1
sign up (for) 33.1
sink in 51.2
sit around 31.2
sit down 8.2
size up 33.1
slack o 22.3
sleep in 8.4
sleep o 8.4
sleep on 47.1
sleep over 8.4
sleepover R5

sleep through 8.4
 slip out 5.2 51.1
 slip up 48.1
 slog away (at) 22.3
 slow down 9.1
 smash up 49.2
 smell of 18.2
 smooth over (with) 44.3
 snap out of 45.2
 snap up 10.1
 snipe around 18.2
 snoop around 4.1
 soak up 35.1
 soldier on 22.1
 sort out 50.1
 speak out 44.1
 see also outspoken R6
 speak up 38.1
 speed up 9.1
 spell out 40.1
 spill out (of) 1.1
 spill over 46.1
 splash out (on) 10.1
 spring on 51.2
 spur on 42.1
 spy on 18.3
 stack up 25.1
 stamp out 13.1
 stand by 3.1
 stand down 23.1
 stand for 37.2
 stand up 19.1
 stand up to 43.1
 start o□11.1
 start out 31.1
 start over (US) 20.1
 start up 24.1
 stay in 5.1
 stay out 5.1
 stay out of 44.2
 stay over 4.2
 stay up 8.3
 stick around 4.1
 stick at 31.1
 stick by 3.1
 stick together 3.1
 stick up for 44.2
 stick with 23.1

stink out 18.2
 stir up 16.2
 stock up (on) 10.1
 stop o□4.1
 stop over 35.1
 stopover R5
 storm out (of) 5.2
 stressed-out R6
 stretch out 33.2
 see also outstretched R6
 strike up 36.1
 string along 41.2
 stumble upon 51.2
 sum up 20.2
 suss out (UK) 41.1
 sweep up 28.1
 swell up 32.1
 swing by 4.1
 swot up on (UK) 20.1

T

tag along 5.1
 tail o□36.1
 take aback 51.2
 take after 2.1
 take along (to) 55.2
 take apart 49.2
 take aside 55.2
 take away 25.2, 30.1, 55.2
 see also takeaway (UK) R5
 take back 10.1, 16.2, 44.3, 55.2
 take in 6.1, 51.2, 55.2
 see also intake R5
 take o□5.2, 6.1, 9.1, 22.1, 55.2
 take on 24.1
 take out 3.2, 14.1, 21.1, 28.1
 see also takeout (US) R5
 take out on 46.1
 take over 23.1
 take to 55.2
 take up 15.1, 31.1, 55.2
 talk at 36.1
 talk down to 36.1
 talk into 36.1
 talk out of 36.1
 talk over 22.2, 36.1
 talk round (UK) 36.1

talk through 36.1
 taste of 18.2
 tear apart 49.2
 tear away (from) 5.2
 tear up 49.2
 tell apart 2.1
 tell from 13.1
 tell o□21.2
 tense up 46.1
 text back 38.3
 think ahead 17.1
 think back (to) 16.2
 think of 39.3
 think over 39.3
 think through 39.3, 50.1
 think up 39.3
 thrash out 50.1
 throw away 28.1, 31.1
 throw on 6.1
 throw (oneself) into 23.1
 throw out 17.1, 39.1
 throw together 17.1
 throw up 32.1
 tidy up (UK) 28.1
 tie up 6.1
 time out 15.1
 tip o□13.1
 tired out R6
 tone down 36.1
 top up 30.2
 touch down 9.1
 touch on 39.1
 toughen up 45.2
 toy with 47.1
 track down 13.1
 trip over 49.1
 try on 10.1
 try out 10.1
 tune in(to) 34.2
 turn around 19.1, 33.1
 turn away 5.2, 19.1
 turn back 9.2
 turn back into 16.3
 turn down 27.3
 turn in 8.4
 turn into 16.3
 turn o□9.2, 27.3
 turn on 1.1, 27.3

turn onto 9.2
 turn out 50.1
 turn over 24.1
 turn to 13.1, 21.1, 45.2, 50.1
 turn up 1.2, 4.1, 27.3
 type in 12.2
 type out 12.2
 type up 37.1

U

upcoming R6
 uplifting R6
 urge on 42.1

V

vote for 13.2
 vote on 13.2

W

wait around (for) 15.2
 wait for 15.2
 wait up 2.1
 wake up 8.1
 wake up to 51.2
 walk around 19.2
 walk in(to) 19.2
 walk into 23.1
 walk o□9.2
 walk out (of) 19.2
 walk over 19.2
 warm down 33.2
 warm to 2.2
 warm up 11.1, 33.2
 wash down 30.2
 wash up (UK) 28.1
 watch out (for) 13.1
 watch over 1.1
 water down 44.3
 wear down 1.1
 wear o□32.1
 see also worn-out R6
 weasel out of 17.2
 weigh in (on) 44.1
 weigh on 46.1

weigh up 47.1
well up 46.1
while away 15.1
whip up 29.1
win back 3.2
win out 26.1
win over 42.1
wind down 23.1, 31.2
wind up 46.1
wipe down 28.1

wipe out 4.1, 21.1
wipe out 33.2
wolf down 30.1
work around 50.1
work out 33.2
work on 21.1
work out 20.1, 26.1, 33.2
workout R5
work through 20.1, 45.2
work toward 31.1

worn-out R6
wrap up 6.1
wriggle out of 17.2
write back 38.3
write down 37.1
write in 37.1
write out 24.1
write out 37.1
write up 37.1

Z
zip up 6.1
zoom in 12.2
zoom out 12.2

Acknowledgments

The publisher would like to thank:

Ankita Awasthi Tröger and Hina Jain for editorial assistance; Anna Scully and Noopur Dalal for design assistance; Laura Caddell for proofreading; Christine Stroyan for audio recording management; ID Audio for audio recording and production; DTP Designer Harish Aggarwal; Jackets Editorial Coordinator Priyanka Sharma; and Managing Jackets Editor Saloni Singh.

All images are copyright DK. For more information, please visit
www.dkimages.com